

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM S-3

REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

68-0533453
(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

**12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344
(952) 345-4200**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**David A. Rosa
Chief Executive Officer
Sunshine Heart, Inc.
12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344
(952) 345-4200**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

**With a copy to:
Phillip D. Torrence, Esq.
Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP
350 East Michigan Avenue, Suite 300
Kalamazoo, MI 49007
(269) 337-7702**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer
Non-accelerated filer (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) Smaller reporting company

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each class of securities to be registered	Amount to be registered (1)	Proposed maximum offering price per unit (2)	Proposed maximum aggregate offering price	Amount of registration fee
Primary offering by Sunshine Heart, Inc.				
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share				
Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value per share				
Warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities				
Debt securities				
Total for primary offering			\$100,000,000	\$12,880 (3)
Secondary offering by selling stockholders				
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share	1,513,006 (4)	\$6.275 (4)	\$9,494,112.65 (4)	\$1,223 (4)
Total for primary and secondary offerings			\$109,494,112.65	\$14,103

- There are being registered hereunder such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock, such indeterminate number of warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, and such indeterminate principal amount of debt securities, as shall have an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$100 million, less the aggregate dollar amount of all securities previously issued hereunder. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price of such debt securities shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate offering price not to exceed \$100 million, less the aggregate dollar amount of all securities previously issued hereunder. In addition, up to 1,513,006 shares of common stock may be sold from time to time pursuant to this registration statement by the selling stockholders named herein. Any securities registered hereunder may be sold separately or in combination with any of the other securities registered hereunder. The securities registered hereunder also include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock and amount of debt securities as may be issued upon conversion of or exchange for preferred stock or debt securities that provide for conversion or exchange, upon exercise of warrants or pursuant to the antidilution provisions of any of such securities. In addition, pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the shares being registered hereunder include such indeterminate number of shares of common stock and preferred stock as may be issuable with respect to the shares being registered hereunder as a result of stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions.
- The proposed maximum offering price per unit of each class of security registered hereunder will be determined from time to time in connection with, and at the time of, the issuance of the securities and is not specified as to each class of security pursuant to General Instruction II.D. of Form S-3, as amended.
- Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, based on the proposed maximum aggregate offering price of all securities listed.
- With respect to shares of common stock to be offered by the selling stockholders in the secondary offering, the price has been estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee, pursuant to Rule 457(c) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, based on the average of the high and low prices reported for the shares of common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market on March 18, 2014.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission acting pursuant to said section 8(a), may determine.

EXPLANATORY NOTE

This registration statement contains two prospectuses:

- a base prospectus which covers both (i) the offering and sale by us of up to \$100 million of our common stock, preferred stock, warrants and debt securities and (ii) the resale by selling stockholders of up to an aggregate of 1,513,006 shares of our common stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants previously issued; and
- a sales agreement prospectus covering the offering and sale of up to \$40 million of our common stock that may be issued and sold under a sales agreement with Cowen and Company, LLC.

The base prospectus immediately follows this explanatory note. The sales agreement prospectus immediately follows the base prospectus. The common stock that may be offered and sold under the sales agreement prospectus is included in the \$100 million of securities that may be offered and sold by us under the base prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

Subject to Completion, dated March 21, 2014

PROSPECTUS

\$100,000,000



**Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Warrants to Purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities
Debt Securities
and
1,513,006 Shares of Common Stock**

This prospectus covers the offering and sale by us of any combination of common stock; preferred stock; warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities; and debt securities, each as described herein, in one or more offerings from time to time. We will describe in a prospectus supplement or sales agreement prospectus the securities we are offering and selling, as well as the specific terms of the securities. The aggregate initial offering price of all securities sold by us under this prospectus will not exceed \$100 million.

This prospectus also covers the resale by selling stockholders of up to an aggregate of 1,513,006 shares of our common stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants previously issued. We will not receive proceeds from the sale of shares of our common stock by the selling stockholders. We may receive proceeds from the exercise of the options and warrants whose underlying shares of common stock are covered by this prospectus.

The securities may be offered and sold by us or selling stockholders from time to time at fixed prices, at market prices or at negotiated prices, and may be offered and sold to or through one or more underwriters, dealers or agents or directly to purchasers on a continuous or delayed basis. See “Plan of Distribution.”

Our common stock is currently listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market (“NASDAQ”) under the symbol “SSH.” On March 18, 2014, the last reported sale price of our common stock on NASDAQ was \$6.58.

Investing in our securities involves certain risks. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page 9 of this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement or sales agreement prospectus for certain risks you should consider.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is , 2014

[Table of Contents](#)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	1
SUMMARY	2
RISK FACTORS	9

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	9
RATIOS OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES	10
USE OF PROCEEDS	10
DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK	10
DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK	14
DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS	16
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES	17
LEGAL OWNERSHIP OF SECURITIES	23
SELLING STOCKHOLDERS	27
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	27
LEGAL MATTERS	28
EXPERTS	28
INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE	28
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	29

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is a part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”), utilizing a shelf registration process. This prospectus covers the primary offering by us of up to an aggregate of \$100 million of securities and the secondary offering by the selling stockholders of up to an aggregate of 1,513,006 shares of our common stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants previously issued. We may offer and sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus and the selling stockholders may offer and sell shares of common stock in one or more offerings from time to time. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities that may be offered and sold hereunder. Each time we or the selling stockholders offer a type or series of securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement (which term includes, as applicable, the sales agreement prospectus filed with the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part) that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the securities.

A prospectus supplement may include a discussion of risks or other special considerations applicable to us or the offered securities. A prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information in this prospectus. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, you must rely on the information in the prospectus supplement. Please carefully read both this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement in their entirety together with additional information described under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” in this prospectus. This prospectus may not be used to offer or sell any securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

The registration statement containing this prospectus, including exhibits to the registration statement, provides additional information about us and the common stock offered under this prospectus. The registration statement can be read on the SEC’s website or at the SEC’s public reading room mentioned under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” in this prospectus.

Neither we nor any selling stockholder has authorized any broker-dealer, salesperson or other person to give any information or to make any representation other than those contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and the accompanying supplement to this prospectus. You must not rely upon any information or representation not contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or the accompanying prospectus supplement. This prospectus and the accompanying supplement to this prospectus do not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy securities, nor do this prospectus and the accompanying supplement to this prospectus constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy securities in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation. The information contained in this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement speaks only as of the date set forth on the cover page and may not reflect subsequent changes in our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects even though this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement is delivered or securities are sold on a later date.

[Table of Contents](#)

SUMMARY

Because this is only a summary, it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. Before you invest, you should carefully read the more detailed information contained in this prospectus and the information incorporated in this prospectus by reference. Our business involves significant risks. You should carefully consider the information under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page 9.

As used in this prospectus, unless otherwise indicated, the terms “we,” “us,” “our Company,” “the Company” and “Sunshine Heart” refer to Sunshine Heart, Inc., a Delaware corporation, and its subsidiaries.

All references in this prospectus to “\$” are to U.S. Dollars.

C-Pulse®, Sunshine®, Sunshine Heart™, C-Patch™ and other trademarks or service marks of Sunshine Heart appearing in this prospectus are the property of Sunshine Heart. Trade names, trademarks and service marks of other companies appearing in this registration statement are the property of the respective owners.

We obtained industry and market data used throughout this prospectus through our research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties and industry and general publications. We have not independently verified market and industry data from third-party sources.

Our Company

Overview

We are an early-stage medical device company focused on developing, manufacturing and commercializing our C-Pulse® Heart Assist System (the “**C-Pulse System**”) for treatment of Class III and ambulatory Class IV heart failure. The C-Pulse System utilizes the scientific principles of intra-aortic balloon counter-pulsation applied in an extra-aortic approach to assist the left ventricle by reducing the workload required to pump blood throughout the body, while increasing blood flow to the coronary arteries.

We are in the process of pursuing regulatory approvals necessary to sell our system in the United States. We completed enrollment of our North American feasibility clinical study in the first half of 2011. In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for the feasibility study and we submitted the clinical data to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “**FDA**”). In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an investigational device exemption (“**IDE**”) application. In October 2012, we announced the results of the 12-month follow-up period for the feasibility study. In November 2012, the FDA provided us with unconditional approval to initiate a pivotal study. Enrollment of our COUNTER HF™ pivotal study commenced in September 2013. We currently expect to complete enrollment of our pivotal study in 2016 and do not anticipate marketing our system in the United States before 2017.

We obtained CE Mark approval for the C-Pulse System in July 2012 and have taken initial steps to evaluate the market potential for our system in targeted countries that accept the CE Mark in anticipation of commencing commercial sales. In order to gain additional clinical data and support reimbursement in Europe, we have initiated a post-market study in Europe which may include data from other geographies (e.g., Canada) that will evaluate endpoints similar to those for our U.S. pivotal study and enrollment under this study commenced in the second quarter of 2013. We do not currently plan to commercialize the C-Pulse System in any European country unless the product is approved for reimbursement. We do not expect to receive reimbursement in Germany before 2015 and cannot be certain of when, or if, we will receive reimbursement in Germany or other targeted countries.

We incurred net losses of \$21.8 million and \$14.1 million in the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively. Historically, sales of the C-Pulse System to hospitals and clinics under contract in conjunction with our North American FDA clinical studies have generated all of our revenue. Our C-Pulse System is not approved for commercial sale. However, the FDA has assigned the C-Pulse System to a Category B designation, making it eligible for reimbursement at certain U.S. sites during our clinical studies. Consequently, upon implant of our C-Pulse System, we are able to invoice hospitals and clinics that are eligible for reimbursement by Medicare,

[Table of Contents](#)

Medicaid or private insurance companies. We expect to continue to incur significant net losses as we continue to conduct clinical studies and pursue commercialization, and as we ramp up sales of our system.

Our Market Opportunity

Heart failure is one of the leading causes of death in the United States and other developed countries. The American Heart Association estimates that 5.7 million people in the United States age 20 and over are affected by heart failure, with an estimated 670,000 new cases diagnosed each year. Nearly 30% of heart failure patients are below the age of 60, and congestive heart failure is the highest U.S. chronic health care expense category.

Heart failure is a progressive disease caused by impairment of the left heart’s ability to pump blood to the various organs of the body. Patients with heart failure commonly experience shortness of breath, fatigue, difficulty exercising and swelling of the legs. The heart becomes weak or stiff and enlarges over time, making it harder for the left heart to pump the blood needed for the body to function properly. The severity of heart failure depends on how well a person’s heart is able to pump blood throughout the body. A common measure of heart failure severity is the New York Heart Association (the “**NYHA**”) Class guideline. Patients are classified in Classes I through IV based on their symptoms and functional limitations. Classes I and II include patients with mild heart failure, Class III with moderate heart failure, and Class IV with severe heart failure.

Our C-Pulse System is intended for NYHA Class III and ambulatory Class IV patients. It is estimated that approximately 1.5 million heart failure patients in the United States fall into this classification range, and we believe approximately 3.7 million patients in Europe are similarly affected.

Treatment alternatives currently available for Class III heart failure patients in the United States consist primarily of pharmacological therapies and pacing devices that are designed to address heart rhythm issues. Although these treatments may provide symptomatic relief and prolong the life of patients, they do not often halt the progression of congestive heart failure. Circulatory assist devices, specifically left ventricular assist devices (“**LVADs**”) have been used to treat Class IV patients in the United States, and one product received FDA approval in the United States for Class IIIb patients although the device is not reimbursed by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services for Class IIIb patients. These devices are designed to take over some or all of the pumping function of the heart by mechanically pumping blood into the aorta. Although such products are effective in increasing blood flow, by design these devices are in contact with the patient’s bloodstream, increasing the risk of adverse events, including thrombosis, bleeding and neurologic events.

Our Strategy

Our goal is to become a market leader in the treatment of moderate to severe heart failure patients through the commercialization of our C-Pulse System, and to continue the development of the system to make it safer and more convenient for patients and physicians. We believe that our technology will provide us with a competitive advantage in the market for treating specific segments of heart failure patients. To achieve our objectives, we intend to:

- *Conduct a Pivotal Study in the United States* - We completed enrollment of the North American feasibility clinical study in the first half of 2011. In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for our North American feasibility clinical study and we submitted the clinical data to the FDA. In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an IDE application. In November 2012, the FDA provided us with unconditional approval to initiate a pivotal study. We commenced enrollment in our COUNTER HF pivotal study in the third quarter of 2013, and currently expect to complete it in 2016.
- *Conduct a Post-Market Study in Europe to Gain Additional Clinical Data* - We have retained consultants to analyze the conditions in various European countries for potential reimbursement for our system and the capabilities of existing hospitals and clinics to implant the C-Pulse System properly and understand the potential benefits of our system. We are targeting the leading LVAD/transplant centers to gain support, promote our technology, and conduct a non-randomized post-market study, the OPTIONS HF study, that will evaluate endpoints similar to those for our U.S. pivotal study to aid our

[Table of Contents](#)

reimbursement efforts and gain additional clinical data. We commenced enrollment in second quarter of 2013 and expect to complete enrollment in this study in 2014 in our initial target markets.

- *Prepare for the Commercial Launch of the C-Pulse System in Europe* - We obtained CE Mark approval for the C-Pulse System in July 2012 and have taken initial steps to evaluate the market potential for our system in targeted countries in Europe in anticipation of commencing commercial sales. We initially plan to sell the C-Pulse System in Europe directly and through experienced distributors in countries where our system is approved for reimbursement or where we otherwise believe there might be a potentially profitable market for our system. We expect our initial sales efforts in Europe will focus on Germany and Italy, which we believe are the largest potential markets for the C-Pulse System in Europe and have supported reimbursement for heart failure technologies in the past. We do not expect to receive reimbursement in Germany before 2015 and cannot be certain of when, or if, we will receive reimbursement in Germany or other targeted countries.
- *Continue to Enhance the C-Pulse System* - We believe it will be important to continue refining the C-Pulse System to make it more appealing for both patients and physicians. Since completing our 20-patient North American feasibility study, we have made several improvements to the C-Pulse System based on the feasibility study outcomes and feedback we received from surgeons and patients during the study. These changes include enhancements to our driver, cuff, and Percutaneous Interface Leads (“PIL”), among others. We have also completed initial animal studies of a next-generation, fully-implantable C-Pulse System, which would eliminate the risk of exit-site infections.

Our System

The C-Pulse System utilizes the scientific principles of intra-aortic balloon counter-pulsation applied in an extra-aortic approach to assist the left ventricle by reducing the workload required to pump blood throughout the body, while increasing blood flow to the coronary arteries. Combined, these potential benefits may help sustain the patient’s current condition or, in some cases, reverse the heart failure process, thereby potentially preventing the need for later-stage heart failure devices, such as LVADs or artificial hearts, or for transplants. It may also provide relief from the symptoms of Class III and ambulatory Class IV heart failure, and improve quality of life and cardiac function. Based on the results from our feasibility study, we also believe that some patients treated with our C-Pulse System will be able to stop using the device due to sustained improvement in their conditions as a result of the therapy.

Once implanted, the C-Pulse cuff is positioned around the patient’s ascending aorta above the aortic valve. An electrocardiogram sensing lead is then attached to the heart to determine timing for cuff inflation and deflation in synchronization with the heartbeat. As the heart fills with blood, the C-Pulse cuff inflates to push blood from the aorta to the rest of the body and to the heart muscle via the coronary arteries. Just before the heart pumps, the C-Pulse cuff deflates to reduce the heart’s workload through pressure changes, allowing the heart to pump with less effort. The C-Pulse cuff and electrical leads are connected to a single line that is run through the abdominal wall to connect to a power driver outside the body. The system’s single unit driver and battery source are contained inside a carrying bag.

Surgeons in the feasibility phase of our clinical study initially implanted the C-Pulse System in patients via a full sternotomy and then via a mini-thoracotomy. During the feasibility study, this minimally invasive procedure was developed to allow the C-Pulse System to be implanted via a small pacemaker-like incision between the patient’s ribs and sternum, rather than through a full sternotomy. The first implant using this less invasive procedure was completed in 2010. Patients implanted via our minimally invasive procedure typically require a hospital stay of four to seven days in connection with implantation of the C-Pulse System, after which they return home. This compares to an average hospital stay of 14 days for patients implanted with the C-Pulse System via a full sternotomy. Therefore, we believe this less invasive approach can reduce procedural time, hospital stays, overall cost and patient risk as compared to treatment options that require a full sternotomy.

The C-Pulse System distinguishes itself from other mechanical heart failure therapies in two important aspects, which we believe differentiate our system from other products addressing moderate to severe heart failure patients. First, the C-Pulse System is placed outside a patient’s vascular system. The C-Pulse cuff is placed around a

[Table of Contents](#)

patient’s ascending aorta and assists the heart’s normal pumping function, rather than being inserted into the vascular system and replacing heart function like other devices such as LVADs. Because the C-Pulse System remains outside the vascular system, there is less risk of complications such as blood clots, stroke and thrombosis in comparison to other mechanical devices that reside or function inside the vascular system. Because it rests outside the vasculature, it also does not require blood thinning agents that are necessary for patients with devices that are in contact with the bloodstream. As with any implanted device with

a percutaneous driver lead, patients using our system have a risk of infection from the implantation procedure or from the driver lead exit site. Any untreated sternal/mediastinal infection arising from the implantation procedure or exit site infection could result in erosion of the aortic wall or an aortic disruption. Because our system has been implanted in a limited number of patients to date, the potential competitive disadvantages and risks associated with the use of our system are not fully known at this time.

Second, once implanted, the C-Pulse System does not need to be in constant operation, and patients can safely turn the device on or off at any time. This feature enables patients to disconnect from the device to perform certain activities such as showering. Patients are not required to visit a medical facility when turning our device on or off or using the device. However, to maximize the benefit from the C-Pulse System, patients are advised to turn off the system only for short periods of time and for specified activities. If the C-Pulse System is not used as directed, patients might experience a return of their heart failure symptoms, a loss of any improvement in their condition resulting from use of our system or an overall worsening of their heart failure symptoms compared to when they began using our system.

Clinical Development

Our North American feasibility clinical study was primarily designed to assess safety and provide indications of performance of the C-Pulse System in moderate to severe heart failure patients who suffer from symptoms such as shortness of breath and reduced mobility. In the first half of 2011, we completed enrollment and implantation of 20 patients in the study and received FDA approval of an expansion protocol to allow us to implant up to 20 additional patients and add two centers to our feasibility study. We have implanted three additional patients with the C-Pulse System since the original 20 patients, one in the United States and two in Canada. We currently do not have plans to implant any additional patients in the United States because the FDA has granted us full approval of the IDE pivotal study.

In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for the feasibility study and we submitted the clinical data to the FDA. In July 2012 we also completed a two-year follow-up for a patient implanted with our system. We believe the results of the six-month and 12-month follow-up demonstrate the feasibility of the C-Pulse System implantation procedure and provide indications of safety and efficacy of the C-Pulse System in patients with moderate to severe heart failure necessary to proceed with a pivotal study. In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an IDE application.

In November 2012, the FDA provided us with approval to initiate a pivotal study. We commenced enrollment of the COUNTER HF pivotal study in the third quarter of 2013, and we currently expect to complete our pivotal study enrollment in 2016. The COUNTER HF study is designed to enroll 388 patients randomized 1:1 versus optimal medical therapy, at up to 40 participating hospitals and clinics. The primary efficacy endpoint of the study is defined as freedom from worsening heart failure resulting in hospitalization, LVAD implantation, cardiac transplantation or heart failure related death.

Corporate Information

Sunshine Heart, Inc. was incorporated in Delaware on August 22, 2002. We began operating our business in November 1999 through Sunshine Heart Company Pty Ltd., which currently is a wholly owned Australian subsidiary of Sunshine Heart, Inc. In September of 2004, Chess Depository Instruments (“CDIs”) representing beneficial ownership of our common stock began trading on the Australian Securities Exchange (the “ASX”) under the symbol “SHC.” Initially, each CDI represented one share of our common stock. In connection with the 1-for-200 reverse stock split we effected on January 27, 2012, we changed this ratio so that each CDI represented 1/200th of a share of our common stock.

[Table of Contents](#)

On September 30, 2011, we filed a Form 10 registration statement with the SEC, which was declared effective on February 14, 2012. The Form 10 registered our common stock under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Our common stock began trading on NASDAQ on February 16, 2012.

On February 5, 2013, we received conditional approval from the ASX to delist from the official list of the ASX. The delisting occurred at the close of trading on May 6, 2013.

Our principal executive offices are located at 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, Minnesota 55344, and our telephone number is (952) 345-4200. Our website address is www.sunshineheart.com. The information on, or that may be accessed through, our website is not incorporated by reference into and should not be considered a part of this prospectus.

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”). An emerging growth company may take advantage of specified reduced reporting and other burdens that are otherwise applicable generally to U.S. public companies. These provisions include:

- a requirement to have only two years of audited financial statements and only two years of related Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations disclosure; and
- an exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

We may take advantage of these provisions for up to five years or such earlier time that we are no longer an emerging growth company. We will cease to be an emerging growth company if we have more than \$1 billion in annual revenue, have more than \$700 million in market value of our shares of common stock held by non-affiliates, or issue more than \$1 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period. We may choose to take advantage of some but not all of these reduced burdens. In addition, the JOBS Act permits emerging growth companies to take advantage of an extended transition period to comply with new or revised accounting standards applicable to U.S. public companies. We have elected to take advantage of the benefits of this extended transition period, and as a result of this election, our financial statements may not be comparable to those of companies that comply with new or revised accounting standards for U.S. public companies.

The Securities We or the Selling Stockholders May Offer

We may offer shares of our common stock and preferred stock, warrants and/or debt securities, either individually or in combination, with a total value of up to \$100 million, and the selling stockholders may offer shares of our common stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants previously issued, from time to time at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of the offering. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we and/or the selling stockholders, as applicable, may offer. Each time we and/or the selling stockholders, as applicable, offer a type or series of securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the securities, including, to the extent applicable:

- designation or classification;
- aggregate principal amount or aggregate offering price;
- maturity, if applicable;
- original issue discount, if any;
- rates and times of payment of interest, dividends or other payments, if any;

[Table of Contents](#)

- redemption, conversion, exercise, exchange, settlement or sinking fund terms, if any;
- conversion, exchange or settlement prices or rates, if any, and, if applicable, any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the conversion, exchange or settlement prices or rates and in the securities or other property receivable upon conversion, exchange or settlement;
- ranking;
- restrictive covenants, if any;
- voting or other rights, if any; and
- certain federal income tax considerations.

A prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus or in documents we have incorporated by reference into this prospectus. However, no prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus shall offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

This prospectus may not be used to offer or sell any securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

We and/or the selling stockholders, as applicable, may sell the securities directly or through underwriters, dealers or agents. We and/or the selling stockholders and such underwriters, dealers or agents, reserve the right to accept or reject all or part of any proposed purchase of securities. If we and/or the selling stockholders do offer securities through underwriters or agents, we will include in the applicable prospectus supplement:

- the names of those underwriters or agents;
- applicable fees, discounts and commissions to be paid to them;
- details regarding over-allotment options, if any; and
- the net proceeds to us.

Common Stock

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote per share for the election of directors and on all other matters that require stockholder approval, as further set forth herein under the heading "Description of Common Stock." Subject to any preferential rights of any then outstanding preferred stock, in the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common stock are entitled to share ratably in the assets remaining after payment of liabilities and the liquidation preferences of any then outstanding preferred stock. Our common stock does not carry any preemptive rights enabling a holder to subscribe for, or receive shares of, any class of our common stock or any other securities convertible into shares of any class of our common stock, or any redemption rights.

Preferred Stock

Our board of directors will determine the designations, voting powers, preferences and rights of the preferred stock, as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, including dividend rights, conversion rights, preemptive rights, terms of redemption or repurchase, liquidation preferences, sinking fund terms and the number of shares constituting any series or the designation of any series. Convertible preferred stock will be convertible into our common stock or exchangeable for other securities. Conversion may be mandatory or at your option and would be at prescribed conversion rates.

[Table of Contents](#)

We will fix the rights, preferences, privileges, qualifications and restrictions of the preferred stock of each series that we sell under this prospectus and applicable prospectus supplements in a certificate of designation relating to that series. We will incorporate by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part the form of any certificate of designation that describes the terms of the series of preferred stock we are offering before the issuance of the related series of preferred stock. We urge you to read the prospectus supplement (and any related free writing prospectus) related to the series of preferred stock being offered, as well as the complete certificate of designation that contains the terms of the applicable series of preferred stock.

Warrants

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities in one or more series, from time to time. We may issue warrants independently or together with common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities, and the warrants may be attached to or separate from those securities.

The warrants will be evidenced by warrant certificates issued under one or more warrant agreements, which are contracts between us and an agent for the holders of the warrants. In this prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the warrants. We urge you, however, to read the prospectus supplement (and any related free writing prospectus) related to the series of warrants being offered, as well as the complete warrant agreements and warrant certificates that contain the terms of the warrants. Complete warrant agreements and warrant certificates containing the terms of the warrants being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports we file with the SEC.

Debt Securities

We may issue debt securities from time to time, in one or more series, as either senior or subordinated debt or as senior or subordinated convertible debt. The senior debt securities will rank equally with any other unsubordinated debt that we may have and may be secured or unsecured. The subordinated debt securities will be subordinate and junior in right of payment, to the extent and in the manner described in the instrument governing the debt, to all or some portion of our indebtedness. Any convertible debt securities that we issue will be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock, preferred stock or other securities of ours. Conversion may be mandatory or at your option and would be at prescribed conversion rates.

The debt securities will be issued under one or more documents called indentures, which are contracts between us and a trustee for the holders of the debt securities. In this prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the debt securities. We urge you, however, to read the prospectus supplement (and any related free writing prospectus) related to the series of debt securities being offered, as well as the complete indentures that contain the terms of the debt securities. Indentures have been filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and supplemental indentures and forms of debt securities containing the terms of debt securities being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports we file with the SEC.

[Table of Contents](#)

RISK FACTORS

Before making an investment decision, you should carefully consider the risks described under “Risk Factors” in the applicable prospectus supplement, together with all of the other information appearing in this prospectus or incorporated by reference into this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement, in light of your particular investment objectives and financial circumstances. Our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially adversely affected by any of these risks. The trading price of our securities could decline due to any of these risks, and you may lose all or part of your investment. This prospectus and the incorporated documents also contain forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks mentioned elsewhere in this prospectus. You should also consider the risks, uncertainties and assumptions discussed under the heading “Risk Factors” included in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, which is on file with the SEC and incorporated herein by reference, and which may be amended, supplemented or superseded from time to time by other reports we file with the SEC in the future.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The SEC encourages companies to disclose forward-looking information so that investors can better understand a company’s future prospects and make informed investment decisions. This prospectus contains such “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. These statements may be made directly in this prospectus, and they may also be made a part of this prospectus by reference to other documents filed with the SEC, which is known as “incorporation by reference.”

Words such as “may,” “anticipate,” “estimate,” “expects,” “projects,” “intends,” “plans,” “believes” and words and terms of similar substance used in connection with any discussion of future operating or financial performance identify forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements are management’s present expectations of future events and are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those described in the forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements might include one or more of the following:

- anticipated results of financing activities;
- anticipated agreements with marketing partners;
- anticipated clinical study timelines or results;
- anticipated research and product development results;
- projected regulatory timelines;
- descriptions of plans or objectives of management for future operations, products or services;
- forecasts of future economic performance; and

· descriptions or assumptions underlying or relating to any of the above items.

Please also see the discussion of risks and uncertainties under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page 9.

In light of these assumptions, risks and uncertainties, the results and events discussed in the forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus or in any document incorporated by reference might not occur. Investors are cautioned not to place undue reliance on the forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date of this prospectus or the date of the document incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We are not under any obligation, and we expressly disclaim any obligation, to update or alter any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. All subsequent forward-looking statements attributable to

[Table of Contents](#)

Sunshine Heart or to any person acting on its behalf are expressly qualified in their entireties by the cautionary statements contained or referred to in this section.

RATIOS OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES

If we offer debt securities and/or preference equity securities under this prospectus, then we will, if required at that time, provide a ratio of earnings to fixed charges and/or ratio of combined fixed charges and preference dividends to earnings, respectively, in the applicable prospectus supplement for such offering.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We will retain broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from our sale of securities offered hereby. Except as described in any prospectus supplement, we currently anticipate using the net proceeds from our sale of securities offered hereby primarily for general corporate purposes, including the further development, manufacture and commercialization of our C-Pulse System and for other working capital expenditures.

In the case of sales by the selling stockholders, we will not receive any of the proceeds from such sales; however, we may receive proceeds from cash payments made in connection with the exercise of options and warrants held by the selling stockholders that are covered by this prospectus.

DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK

The following description of our common stock is a summary only and is qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, both of which are exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, have been filed with the SEC and are available at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov.

General Terms

We have authority to issue up to 100,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. As of March 18, 2014, we had 16,872,698 shares of our common stock outstanding. All outstanding shares of our common stock are fully paid and non-assessable.

The transfer agent and registrar for transfers of shares of our common stock is American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC.

The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate and issue in the future. Subject in all cases to the foregoing limitation, the holders of our common stock have the rights, preferences and privileges below.

Dividends

Holders of our common stock are entitled to receive dividends when and as declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available.

Voting

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share on each matter properly submitted to our stockholders for their vote; provided however, that except as otherwise required by law, holders of our common stock will not be entitled to vote on any amendment to our certificate of incorporation (including any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock) that relates solely to the terms of a series of outstanding preferred stock if the holders of such affected series are entitled, either separately or together as a class with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon by law or pursuant to our certificate of incorporation (including any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock).

[Table of Contents](#)

Subject to the voting restrictions described above, holders of our common stock may adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws and/or alter certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation with the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of the voting power of all of the then-outstanding shares of our capital stock entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, in addition to any vote of the holders of a class or series of our stock required by law or our certificate of incorporation. Those provisions of our certificate of incorporation that may be altered only by the super-majority vote described above relate to:

· the number of directors on our board of directors, the classification of our board of directors and the terms of the members of our board of directors;

- the limitations on removal of any of our directors described below under “—Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law;”
- the ability of our directors to fill any vacancy on our board of directors by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors then in office under certain circumstances;
- the ability of our board of directors to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws and the super-majority vote of our stockholders required to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws described above;
- the limitation on action of our stockholders by written action described below under “—Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law;”
- the choice of forum provision described below under “—Choice of Forum;”
- the limitations on director liability and indemnification described below under the heading “—Limitation on Liability of Directors and Indemnification;” and
- the super-majority voting requirement to amend our certificate of incorporation described above.

Conversion, Redemption and Preemptive Rights

Holders of our common stock do not have any conversion, redemption or preemptive rights pursuant to our organizational documents.

Liquidation, Dissolution and Winding-up

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common stock are entitled to share ratably in any assets remaining after the satisfaction in full of the prior rights of creditors and the aggregate of any liquidation preference pursuant to the terms of any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock.

Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law

Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws may be considered to have an anti-takeover effect, such as those provisions:

- providing for our board of directors to be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms, with only one class of directors being elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders and the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms;

[Table of Contents](#)

- authorizing our board of directors to issue from time to time any series of preferred stock and fix the voting powers, designation, powers, preferences and rights of the shares of such series of preferred stock;
- prohibiting stockholders from acting by written consent in lieu of a meeting;
- requiring advance notice of stockholder intention to put forth director nominees or bring up other business at a stockholders’ meeting;
- prohibiting stockholders from calling a special meeting of stockholders;
- requiring a 66 2/3% super-majority stockholder approval in order for stockholders to alter, amend or repeal certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation;
- requiring a 66 2/3% super-majority stockholder approval in order for stockholders to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws;
- providing that, subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock to elect additional directors under specified circumstances, neither the board of directors nor any individual director may be removed without cause;
- creating the possibility that our board of directors could prevent a coercive takeover of our Company due to the significant amount of authorized, but unissued shares of our common stock and preferred stock;
- providing that, subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock, the number of directors shall be fixed from time to time exclusively by our board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors; and
- providing that any vacancies on our board of directors under certain circumstances will be filled only by a majority of our board of directors then in office, even if less than a quorum, and not by the stockholders.

Stockholder Rights Plan

On June 14, 2013, the Company adopted a stockholder rights plan (the “**Rights Plan**”), which entitles the holders of the rights to purchase from the Company 1/1,000th of a share of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, at a purchase price of \$35.00 per share, as adjusted (a “**Right**”), upon certain trigger events. In connection therewith, on June 14, 2013, the Company’s board of directors authorized 30,000 shares of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock and it declared a dividend of one Right per each share of common stock of the Company outstanding as of

June 24, 2013. Each 1/1,000th of a share of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock has terms that are substantially the economic and voting equivalent of one share of the Company's common stock. However, until a Right is exercised or exchanged in accordance with the provisions of the Rights Plan, the holder thereof will have no rights as a stockholder of the Company, including, but not limited to, the right to vote for the election of directors or upon any matter submitted to stockholders of the Company. The Rights Plan has a three-year term and the board of directors may terminate the Rights Plan at any time (subject to the redemption of the Rights for a nominal value). The Rights may cause substantial dilution to a person or group (together with all affiliates and associates of such person or group and any person or group of persons acting in concert therewith) that acquires beneficial ownership of 15% or more of the Company's stock on terms not approved by the board of directors or takes other specified actions.

Delaware Law

We are also subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended (the "**DGCL**"), which generally prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any business combination with any interested

[Table of Contents](#)

stockholder for a period of three years following the date that the stockholder became an interested stockholder, unless:

- prior to that date, our board of directors approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon consummation of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of our voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding for purposes of determining the number of shares outstanding (but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder) those shares owned by (i) persons who are directors and also officers and (ii) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- on or subsequent to that date, the business combination is approved by our board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

In general, Section 203 of the DGCL defines an interested stockholder as an entity or person beneficially owning 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation and any entity or person affiliated with or controlling or controlled by any of these entities or persons.

The above-summarized provisions of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, the Rights Plan and the above-summarized provisions of the DGCL could make it more difficult to acquire us by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise, or to remove incumbent officers and directors. These provisions are expected to discourage certain types of coercive takeover practices and takeover bids that our board of directors may consider inadequate and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure us outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover or acquisition proposals because, among other things, negotiation of these proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

Choice of Forum

Our certificate of incorporation provides that, unless we consent in writing otherwise, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for any (i) derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (ii) action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty owed by any of our directors, officers or other employees to us or any of our stockholders; (iii) action asserting a claim pursuant to the DGCL; or (iv) action asserting a claim that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine.

Limitation on Liability of Directors and Indemnification

Our certificate of incorporation limits the liability of our directors to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that directors of a corporation will not be personally liable for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duties as directors, except for liability for any:

- breach of their duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- unlawful payment of dividends or redemption of shares as provided in Section 174 of the DGCL; or
- transaction from which the directors derived an improper personal benefit.

[Table of Contents](#)

These limitations of liability do not apply to liabilities arising under federal securities laws and do not affect the availability of equitable remedies such as injunctive relief or rescission.

Our bylaws provide that we will indemnify and advance expenses to our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by law or, if applicable, pursuant to indemnification agreements. They further provide that we may choose to indemnify our other employees or agents from time to time. Subject to certain exceptions and procedures, our bylaws also require us to advance to any person who was or is a party, or is threatened to be made a party, to any proceeding by reason of the person's service as one of our directors or officers all expenses incurred by the person in connection with such proceeding.

Section 145(g) of the DGCL and our bylaws also permit us to secure insurance on behalf of any officer, director, employee or other agent for any liability arising out of his or her actions in connection with their services to us, regardless of whether our bylaws permit indemnification. We maintain a directors' and officers' liability insurance policy.

We entered into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers that provide, in general, that we will indemnify them to the fullest extent permitted by law in connection with their service to us or on our behalf and, subject to certain exceptions and procedures, that we will advance to them all expenses that they incur in connection with any proceeding to which they are, or are threatened to be made, a party.

At present, there is no pending litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors or officers as to which indemnification is required or permitted, and we are not aware of any threatened litigation or proceeding that may result in a claim for indemnification.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Company pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the Company has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

Listing

Our common stock is listed on NASDAQ under the symbol "SSH." CDIs representing beneficial ownership of our common stock traded on the ASX from September 2004 until the Company's delisting from the ASX, which occurred at the close of trading on May 6, 2013.

DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK

We have authority to issue up to 40,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 30,000 shares of which are designated as Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock in connection with the Rights Plan and none of which were outstanding as of March 18, 2014.

We may issue any class of preferred stock in any series. Our board of directors has the authority to establish and designate series, and to fix the number of shares included in each such series and to determine or alter for each such series, such voting powers, designation, preferences, and relative participating, optional, or other rights and such qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof. Our board of directors is not restricted in repurchasing or redeeming such stock while there is any arrearage in the payment of dividends or sinking fund installments. Our board of directors is authorized to increase or decrease the number of shares of any series subsequent to the issuance of shares of that series, but not below the number of shares of such series then outstanding. The number of authorized shares of preferred stock may be increased or decreased, but not below the number of shares thereof then outstanding, by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the common stock, without a vote of the holders of the preferred stock, or of any series thereof, unless a vote of any such holders is required pursuant to the terms of any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock.

Prior to issuance of shares of any series of preferred stock, our board of directors is required by Delaware law to adopt resolutions and file a certificate of designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware. The certificate of designation fixes for each class or series the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting

[Table of Contents](#)

powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of redemption for each class or series. Any shares of preferred stock will, when issued, be fully paid and non-assessable.

For any series of preferred stock that we may issue, our board of directors will determine and the prospectus supplement relating to such series will describe:

- the title and stated value of the preferred stock;
- the number of shares of the preferred stock offered, the liquidation preference per share and the offering price of the preferred stock;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) or payment date(s) or method(s) of calculation applicable to the preferred stock;
- whether dividends are cumulative or non-cumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends on the preferred stock will accumulate;
- our right, if any, to defer payment of dividends and the maximum length of any such deferral period;
- the procedures for auction and remarketing, if any, for the preferred stock;
- the provisions for a sinking fund, if any, for the preferred stock;
- the provision for redemption, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange;
- the terms and conditions, if applicable, upon which the preferred stock will be convertible into common stock, including the conversion price or manner of calculation and conversion period;
- voting rights, if any, of the preferred stock;
- whether interests in the preferred stock will be represented by depositary shares;
- a discussion of any material or special U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;

- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs;
- any limitations on issuance of any class or series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the class or series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights, limitations or restrictions of the preferred stock.

Delaware law provides that the holders of preferred stock will have the right to vote separately as a class (or, in some cases, as a series) on an amendment to our certificate of incorporation if the amendment would change the par value or, unless the certificate of incorporation then in effect provides otherwise, the number of authorized shares of such class or change the powers, preferences or special rights of such class or series so as to adversely affect the class or series, as the case may be. This right is in addition to any voting rights that may be provided for in the applicable certificate of designation.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

The following is a general description of the terms of the warrants we may issue from time to time unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement. Particular terms of any warrants we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants.

General Terms

We may issue warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. Warrants may be issued independently or together with other securities and may be attached or separate from such securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants we may issue, including the following:

- the title and aggregate number of the warrants;
- the price or prices at which the warrants will be issued and the currency or currencies in which the price of the warrants may be payable;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which the warrants are issued and the number of warrants issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;
- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one warrant;
- in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock, as the case may be, purchasable upon the exercise of one warrant and the price at which those shares may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the date on which the right to exercise the warrants will commence and the date on which such right will expire (subject to any extension);
- whether the warrants will be issued in registered form or bearer form;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of the warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- if applicable, the date on and after which the warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- if applicable, the procedures for adjusting the exercise price and number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchasable upon the exercise of each warrant upon the occurrence of certain events, including stock splits, reverse stock splits, combinations, subdivisions or reclassifications of common stock or preferred stock;
- the effect of any merger, consolidation, sale or other disposition of our business on the warrant agreement and the warrants;
- the terms of any rights to redeem or call the warrants;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;

[Table of Contents](#)

- if applicable, a discussion of any material or special U.S. federal income tax consequences of holding or exercising the warrants; and
- any other terms of the warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the warrants.

We and the warrant agent may amend or supplement the warrant agreement for a series of warrants without the consent of the holders of the warrants issued thereunder to effect changes that are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and that do not materially and adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants.

Exercise of Warrants

Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase for cash such common stock or preferred stock at the exercise price or such principal amount of debt securities as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants offered thereby. Warrants may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement beginning on the date specified therein and continuing until the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will become void.

Upon receipt of the required payment and the warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will issue and deliver the securities purchasable upon such exercise. If fewer than all of the warrants represented by the warrant certificate are exercised, then we will issue a new warrant certificate for the remaining amount of warrants. If we so indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may surrender securities as all or part of the exercise price for warrants.

Prior to exercising their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise, including, in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the right to receive dividends, if any, or payments upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up or to exercise any voting rights or, in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the right to receive principal, premium, if any, or interest payments, on the debt securities purchasable upon exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture.

Governing Law

Any warrants and related warrant agreements will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

The following is a general description of the terms of debt securities we may issue from time to time unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement. Particular terms of any debt securities we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such debt securities. Unless the context requires otherwise, whenever we refer to the indentures, we also are referring to any supplemental indentures that specify the terms of a particular series of debt securities.

We will issue the senior debt securities under the senior indenture that we will enter into with the trustee named in the senior indenture. We will issue the subordinated debt securities under the subordinated indenture that we will enter into with the trustee named in the subordinated indenture. The indentures will be qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the “*Trust Indenture Act*”). We use the term “*debenture trustee*” to refer to either the trustee under the senior indenture or the trustee under the subordinated indenture, as applicable. We have filed forms of indentures to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and supplemental indentures and forms of debt securities containing the terms of the debt securities being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports that we file with the SEC.

[Table of Contents](#)

The following summaries of material provisions of the senior debt securities, the subordinated debt securities and the indentures are subject to, and qualified in their entireties by reference to, all of the provisions of the indenture applicable to a particular series of debt securities. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplements and any related free writing prospectuses related to the debt securities that we may offer under this prospectus, as well as the complete indentures that contain the terms of the debt securities. Except as we may otherwise indicate, the terms of the senior indenture and the subordinated indenture are identical.

General

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of debt securities being offered, including:

- the title;
- the principal amount being offered, and if a series, the total amount authorized and the total amount outstanding;
- any limit on the amount that may be issued;
- whether or not we will issue the series of debt securities in global form, the terms and who the depository will be;
- the maturity date;
- whether and under what circumstances, if any, we will pay additional amounts on any debt securities held by a person who is not a U.S. person for tax purposes, and whether we can redeem the debt securities if we have to pay such additional amounts;
- the annual interest rate, which may be fixed or variable, or the method for determining the rate and the date interest will begin to accrue, the dates interest will be payable and the regular record dates for interest payment dates or the method for determining such dates;
- whether or not the debt securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- the terms of the subordination of any series of subordinated debt;
- the place where payments will be payable;
- restrictions on transfer, sale or other assignment, if any;
- our right, if any, to defer payment of interest and the maximum length of any such deferral period;

- the date, if any, after which, and the price at which, we may, at our option, redeem the series of debt securities pursuant to any optional or provisional redemption provisions and the terms of those redemption provisions;
- the date, if any, on which, and the price at which we are obligated, pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund or analogous fund provisions or otherwise, to redeem, or at the holder's option to purchase, the series of debt securities and the currency or currency unit in which the debt securities are payable;
- whether the indenture will restrict our ability and/or the ability of our subsidiaries to: incur additional indebtedness; issue additional securities; create liens; pay dividends and make distributions in respect of our capital stock and the capital stock of our subsidiaries; redeem capital stock; place restrictions on our subsidiaries' ability to pay dividends, make distributions or transfer assets; make investments or

[Table of Contents](#)

- other restricted payments; sell or otherwise dispose of assets; enter into sale-leaseback transactions; engage in transactions with stockholders and affiliates; issue or sell stock of our subsidiaries; or effect a consolidation or merger;
- whether the indenture will require us to maintain any interest coverage, fixed charge, cash flow-based, asset-based or other financial ratios;
- a discussion of any material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the debt securities;
- information describing any book-entry features;
- provisions for a sinking fund purchase or other analogous fund, if any;
- the applicability of the provisions in the indenture on discharge;
- whether the debt securities are to be offered at a price such that they will be deemed to be offered at an "original issue discount" as defined in paragraph (a) of Section 1273 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended;
- the denominations in which we will issue the series of debt securities, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- the currency of payment of debt securities if other than U.S. dollars and the manner of determining the equivalent amount in U.S. dollars; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the debt securities, including any additional events of default or covenants provided with respect to the debt securities, and any terms that may be required by us or advisable under applicable laws or regulations.

Conversion or Exchange Rights

We will set forth in the prospectus supplement the terms on which a series of debt securities may be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock or our other securities, if applicable. We will include provisions as to whether conversion or exchange is mandatory, at the option of the holder, or at our option. We may include provisions pursuant to which the number of shares of our common stock or our other securities that the holders of the series of debt securities receive would be subject to adjustment.

Consolidation, Merger or Sale

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the indentures will not contain any covenant that restricts our ability to merge or consolidate, or sell, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of our assets. However, any successor to or acquirer of such assets must assume all of our obligations under the indentures or the debt securities, as appropriate. If the debt securities are convertible into or exchangeable for our other securities or securities of other entities, the person with whom we consolidate or merge or to whom we sell all of our property must make provisions for the conversion of the debt securities into securities that the holders of the debt securities would have received if they had converted the debt securities before the consolidation, merger or sale.

Events of Default Under the Indenture

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the following are events of default under the indentures with respect to any series of debt securities that we may issue:

[Table of Contents](#)

- if we fail to pay interest when due and payable and our failure continues for 90 days and the time for payment has not been extended or deferred;
- if we fail to pay the principal, premium or sinking fund payment, if any, when due and payable and the time for payment has not been extended or delayed;
- if we fail to observe or perform any other covenant contained in the debt securities or the indentures, other than a covenant specifically relating to another series of debt securities, and our failure continues for 90 days after we receive notice from the debenture trustee or holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the applicable series; and

- if specified events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur.

If an event of default with respect to debt securities of any series occurs and is continuing, other than an event of default specified in the last bullet point above, the debenture trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series, by notice to us in writing, and to the debenture trustee if notice is given by such holders, may declare the unpaid principal of, premium, if any, and accrued interest, if any, due and payable immediately. If an event of default specified in the last bullet point above occurs with respect to us, the principal amount of and accrued interest, if any, of each issue of debt securities then outstanding shall be due and payable without any notice or other action on the part of the debenture trustee or any holder.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of an affected series may waive any default or event of default with respect to the series and its consequences, except defaults or events of default regarding payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, unless we have cured the default or event of default in accordance with the indenture. Any waiver shall cure the default or event of default.

Subject to the terms of the indentures, if an event of default under an indenture shall occur and be continuing, the debenture trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under such indenture at the request or direction of any of the holders of the applicable series of debt securities, unless such holders have offered the debenture trustee reasonable indemnity. The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the debenture trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the debenture trustee, with respect to the debt securities of that series, provided that:

- the direction so given by the holder is not in conflict with any law or the applicable indenture; and
- subject to its duties under the Trust Indenture Act, the debenture trustee need not take any action that might involve it in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the holders not involved in the proceeding.

A holder of the debt securities of any series will have the right to institute a proceeding under the indentures or to appoint a receiver or trustee, or to seek other remedies only if:

- the holder has given written notice to the debenture trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to that series;
- the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series have made written request, and such holders have offered reasonable indemnity to the debenture trustee to institute the proceeding as trustee; and
- the debenture trustee does not institute the proceeding, and does not receive from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series other conflicting directions within 90 days after the notice, request and offer.

[Table of Contents](#)

These limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a holder of debt securities if we default in the payment of the principal, premium, if any, or interest on, the debt securities.

We will periodically file statements with the debenture trustee regarding our compliance with specified covenants in the indentures.

Modification of Indenture; Waiver

We and the debenture trustee may change an indenture without the consent of any holders with respect to specific matters:

- to fix any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency in the indenture;
- to comply with the provisions described above under “—Consolidation, Merger or Sale;”
- to comply with any requirements of the SEC in connection with the qualification of any indenture under the Trust Indenture Act;
- to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication and delivery of debt securities, as set forth in the indenture;
- to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the debt securities of any series as provided under “—General” to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of the indenture or any series of debt securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of debt securities;
- to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee;
- to provide for uncertificated debt securities in addition to or in place of certificated debt securities and to make all appropriate changes for such purpose;
- to add to our covenants such new covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions for the protection of the holders, and to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an event of default; or
- to change anything that does not materially adversely affect the interests of any holder of debt securities of any series.

In addition, under the indentures, the rights of holders of a series of debt securities may be changed by us and the debenture trustee with the written consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series that is affected. However, unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, we and the debenture trustee may make the following changes only with the consent of each holder of any outstanding debt securities affected:

- extending the fixed maturity of the series of debt securities;
- reducing the principal amount, reducing the rate of or extending the time of payment of interest, or reducing any premium payable upon the redemption of any debt securities; or
- reducing the percentage of debt securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any amendment, supplement, modification or waiver.

[Table of Contents](#)

Discharge

Each indenture provides that we can elect to be discharged from our obligations with respect to one or more series of debt securities, except for specified obligations, including obligations to:

- register the transfer or exchange of debt securities of the series;
- replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities of the series;
- maintain paying agencies;
- hold monies for payment in trust;
- recover excess money held by the debenture trustee;
- compensate and indemnify the debenture trustee; and
- appoint any successor trustee.

In order to exercise our rights to be discharged, we must deposit with the debenture trustee money or government obligations sufficient to pay all the principal of, any premium, if any, and interest on, the debt securities of the series on the dates payments are due.

Form, Exchange and Transfer

We will issue the debt securities of each series only in fully registered form without coupons and, unless we provide otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof. The indentures provide that we may issue debt securities of a series in temporary or permanent global form and as book-entry securities that will be deposited with, or on behalf of, The Depository Trust Company (“*DTC*”) or another depository named by us and identified in a prospectus supplement with respect to that series. See “Legal Ownership of Securities” for a further description of the terms relating to any book-entry securities.

At the option of the holder, subject to the terms of the indentures and the limitations applicable to global securities described in the applicable prospectus supplement, the holder of the debt securities of any series can exchange the debt securities for other debt securities of the same series, in any authorized denomination and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

Subject to the terms of the indentures and the limitations applicable to global securities set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the debt securities may present the debt securities for exchange or for registration of transfer, duly endorsed or with the form of transfer endorsed thereon duly executed if so required by us or the security registrar, at the office of the security registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for this purpose. Unless otherwise provided in the debt securities that the holder presents for transfer or exchange, we will impose no service charge for any registration of transfer or exchange, but we may require payment of any taxes or other governmental charges.

We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement the security registrar, and any transfer agent in addition to the security registrar, that we initially designate for any debt securities. We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of each series.

If we elect to redeem the debt securities of any series, we will not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange any debt securities of that series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any debt

[Table of Contents](#)

securities that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing; or

- register the transfer of or exchange any debt securities so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any debt securities we are redeeming in part.

Information Concerning the Debenture Trustee

The debenture trustee, other than during the occurrence and continuance of an event of default under an indenture, undertakes to perform only those duties as are specifically set forth in the applicable indenture. Upon an event of default under an indenture, the debenture trustee must use the same degree of care as a prudent person would exercise or use in the conduct of his or her own affairs. Subject to this provision, the debenture trustee is under no obligation to exercise any of the powers given it by the indentures at the request of any holder of debt securities unless it is offered reasonable security and indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that it might incur.

Payment and Paying Agents

Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make payment of the interest on any debt securities on any interest payment date to the person in whose name the debt securities, or one or more predecessor securities, are registered at the close of business on the regular record date for the interest.

We will pay principal of and any premium and interest on the debt securities of a particular series at the office of the paying agents designated by us, except that unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make interest payments by check that we will mail to the holder or by wire transfer to certain holders. Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will designate the corporate trust office of the debenture trustee in the City of New York as our sole paying agent for payments with respect to debt securities of each series. We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement any other paying agents that we initially designate for the debt securities of a particular series. We will maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of a particular series.

All money we pay to a paying agent or the debenture trustee for the payment of the principal of or any premium or interest on any debt securities that remains unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the holder of the debt security thereafter may look only to us for payment thereof.

Governing Law

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

Subordination of Subordinated Debt Securities

The subordinated debt securities will be unsecured and will be subordinate and junior in priority of payment to certain of our other indebtedness to the extent described in a prospectus supplement. The subordinated indenture does not limit the amount of subordinated debt securities that we may issue, nor does it limit us from issuing any other secured or unsecured debt.

LEGAL OWNERSHIP OF SECURITIES

We can issue securities in registered form or in the form of one or more global securities. We describe global securities in greater detail below. We refer to those persons who have securities registered in their own names on the books that we or any applicable trustee or depositary or warrant agent maintain for this purpose as the “holders” of those securities. These persons are the legal holders of the securities. We refer to those persons who, indirectly through others, own beneficial interests in securities that are not registered in their own names, as “indirect holders”

[Table of Contents](#)

of those securities. As we discuss below, indirect holders are not legal holders, and investors in securities issued in book-entry form or in street name will be indirect holders.

Book-Entry Holders

We may issue securities in book-entry form only, as we will specify in the applicable prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus. This means securities may be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of a financial institution that holds them as depositary on behalf of other financial institutions that participate in the depositary’s book-entry system. These participating institutions, which are referred to as participants, in turn, hold beneficial interests in the securities on behalf of themselves or their customers.

Only the person in whose name a security is registered is recognized as the holder of that security. Global securities will be registered in the name of the depositary or its participants. Consequently, for global securities, we will recognize only the depositary as the holder of the securities, and we will make all payments on the securities to the depositary. The depositary passes along the payments it receives to its participants, which in turn pass the payments along to their customers who are the beneficial owners. The depositary and its participants do so under agreements they have made with one another or with their customers; they are not obligated to do so under the terms of the securities.

As a result, investors in a global security will not own securities directly. Instead, they will own beneficial interests in a global security, through a bank, broker or other financial institution that participates in the depositary’s book-entry system or holds an interest through a participant. As long as the securities are issued in global form, investors will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the securities.

Street Name Holders

We may terminate a global security or issue securities that are not issued in global form. In these cases, investors may choose to hold their securities in their own names or in “street name.” Securities held by an investor in street name would be registered in the name of a bank, broker or other financial institution that the investor chooses, and the investor would hold only a beneficial interest in those securities through an account he or she maintains at that institution.

For securities held in street name, we or any applicable trustee or depositary will recognize only the intermediary banks, brokers and other financial institutions in whose names the securities are registered as the holders of those securities, and we or any such trustee or depositary will make all payments on those securities to them. These institutions pass along the payments they receive to their customers who are the beneficial owners, but only because they agree

to do so in their customer agreements or because they are legally required to do so. Investors who hold securities in street name will be indirect holders, not holders, of those securities.

Legal Holders

Our obligations, as well as the obligations of any applicable trustee or third party employed by us or a trustee, run only to the legal holders of the securities. We do not have obligations to investors who hold beneficial interests in global securities, in street name or by any other indirect means. This will be the case whether an investor chooses to be an indirect holder of a security or has no choice because we are issuing the securities only in global form.

For example, once we make a payment or give a notice to the holder, we have no further responsibility for the payment or notice even if that holder is required, under agreements with depository participants or customers or by law, to pass it along to the indirect holders but does not do so. Similarly, we may want to obtain the approval of the holders to amend an indenture, to relieve us of the consequences of a default or of our obligation to comply with a particular provision of an indenture, or for other purposes. In such an event, we would seek approval only from the legal holders, and not the indirect holders, of the securities. Whether and how the holders contact the indirect holders is up to the legal holders.

[Table of Contents](#)

Special Considerations for Indirect Holders

If you hold securities through a bank, broker or other financial institution, either in book-entry form because the securities are represented by one or more global securities or in street name, you should check with your own institution to find out:

- how it handles securities payments and notices;
- whether it imposes fees or charges;
- how it would handle a request for the holders' consent, if ever required;
- whether and how you can instruct it to send you securities registered in your own name so you can be a holder, if that is permitted in the future;
- how it would exercise rights under the securities if there were a default or other event triggering the need for holders to act to protect their interests; and
- if the securities are global securities, how the depository's rules and procedures will affect these matters.

Global Securities

A global security is a security which represents one or any other number of individual securities held by a depository. Generally, all securities represented by the same global securities will have the same terms.

Each security issued in book-entry form will be represented by a global security that we issue to, deposit with and register in the name of a financial institution or its nominee that we select. The financial institution that we select for this purpose is called the depository. Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement or a free writing prospectus, DTC will be the depository for all global securities issued under this prospectus.

A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depository, its nominee or a successor depository, unless special termination situations arise. We describe those situations below under "—Special Situations When a Global Security Will Be Terminated." As a result of these arrangements, the depository, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and holder of all securities represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. Beneficial interests must be held by means of an account with a broker, bank or other financial institution that in turn has an account with the depository or with another institution that does. Thus, an investor whose security is represented by a global security will not be a holder of the security, but only an indirect holder of a beneficial interest in the global security.

If the prospectus supplement or a free writing prospectus for a particular security indicates that the security will be issued as a global security, then the security will be represented by a global security at all times unless and until the global security is terminated. If termination occurs, we may issue the securities through another book-entry clearing system or decide that the securities may no longer be held through any book-entry clearing system.

Special Considerations for Global Securities

As an indirect holder, an investor's rights relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depository, as well as general laws relating to securities transfers. We do not recognize an indirect holder as a legal holder of securities and instead deal only with the depository that holds the global security.

If securities are issued only as a global security, an investor should be aware of the following:

[Table of Contents](#)

- An investor cannot cause the securities to be registered in his or her name, and cannot obtain non-global certificates for his or her interest in the securities, except in the special situations we describe below.
- An investor will be an indirect holder and must look to his or her own bank or broker for payments on the securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the securities, as we describe above.

- An investor may not be able to sell interests in the securities to some insurance companies and to other institutions that are required by law to own their securities in non-book-entry form.
- An investor may not be able to pledge his or her interest in the global security in circumstances where certificates representing the securities must be delivered to the lender or other beneficiary of the pledge in order for the pledge to be effective.
- The depositary's policies, which may change from time to time, will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to an investor's interest in the global security. We and any applicable trustee have no responsibility for any aspect of the depositary's actions or for its records of ownership interests in the global security. We and the trustee also do not supervise the depositary in any way.
- The depositary may, and we understand that DTC will, require that those who purchase and sell interests in the global security within its book-entry system use immediately available funds, and your broker or bank may require you to do so as well.
- Financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system, and through which an investor holds its interest in the global security, may also have their own policies affecting payments, notices and other matters relating to the securities. There may be more than one financial intermediary in the chain of ownership for an investor. We do not monitor and are not responsible for the actions of any of those intermediaries.

Special Situations When a Global Security Will Be Terminated

In a few special situations described below, a global security will terminate and interests in it will be exchanged for physical certificates representing those interests. After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold securities directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in securities transferred to their own name, so that they will be direct holders. We have described the rights of holders and street name investors above.

A global security will terminate when the following special situations occur:

- if the depositary notifies us that it is unwilling, unable or no longer qualified to continue as depositary for that global security and we do not appoint another institution to act as depositary within 90 days;
- if we notify any applicable trustee that we wish to terminate that global security; or
- if an event of default has occurred with regard to securities represented by that global security and has not been cured or waived.

The prospectus supplement or a free writing prospectus may also list additional situations for terminating a global security that would apply only to the particular series of securities covered by the prospectus supplement or a free writing prospectus. When a global security terminates, the depositary, and not we or any applicable trustee, is responsible for deciding the names of the institutions that will be the initial direct holders.

[Table of Contents](#)

SELLING STOCKHOLDERS

The selling stockholders may offer and sell from time to time an aggregate of 1,513,006 shares of common stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of certain (i) options previously issued in connection with renounceable rights issues on December 7, 2010 and January 20, 2011 or a private placement on September 9, 2011 and (ii) warrants previously issued in connection with private placements on September 16, 2011 and February 8, 2012. Additional information about the selling stockholders, where applicable, will be set forth in a prospectus supplement, in a post-effective amendment, or in filings we make with the SEC under the Exchange Act that are incorporated herein by reference.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, may sell the securities in one or more of the following ways (or in any combination) from time to time:

- through underwriters or dealers;
- directly to a limited number of purchasers or to a single purchaser; or
- through agents.

Each time we offer and sell securities under this prospectus, we will file a prospectus supplement. The prospectus supplement will state the terms of the offering of the securities, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents;
- the purchase price of such securities and the proceeds to be received by the Company, if any;
- any underwriting discounts or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- any initial public offering price;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallowed or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchanges on which the securities may be listed.

Any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time.

If we and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, use underwriters in the sale, the securities will be acquired by the underwriters for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions, including:

- negotiated transactions;
- at a fixed public offering price or prices, which may be changed;
- at market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- at prices related to prevailing market prices; or
- at negotiated prices.

Unless otherwise stated in a prospectus supplement, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase any

[Table of Contents](#)

securities will be conditioned on customary closing conditions and the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of such series of securities, if any are purchased.

We and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, may sell the securities through agents from time to time. The prospectus supplement will name any agent involved in the offer or sale of the securities and any commissions we pay to them. Generally, any agent will be acting on a best efforts basis for the period of its appointment.

We and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, may authorize underwriters, dealers or agents to solicit offers by certain purchasers to purchase the securities from Sunshine Heart at the public offering price set forth in the prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. The contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth any commissions we pay for solicitation of these contracts.

Underwriters and agents may be entitled under agreements entered into with Sunshine Heart and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, to indemnification by Sunshine Heart and/or the selling stockholders, if applicable, against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution with respect to payments which the underwriters or agents may be required to make. Underwriters and agents may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for Sunshine Heart and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.

Each series of securities will be a new issue of securities and will have no established trading market other than the common stock which is listed on NASDAQ. Any underwriters to whom securities are sold for public offering and sale may make a market in the securities, but such underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. The securities, other than the common stock, may or may not be listed on a national securities exchange.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Sunshine Heart, Inc. and subsidiaries appearing in Sunshine Heart, Inc.'s Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended December 31, 2013, have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon (which contains an explanatory paragraph describing conditions that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern as described in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements), incorporated by reference therein, and incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements are incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

We "incorporate by reference" certain documents that we have filed with the SEC into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is deemed to be part of this prospectus, except for any information superseded by information contained directly in this prospectus. This prospectus incorporates by reference our:

- Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2014;
- the information specifically incorporated by reference into our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013 from our definitive Proxy Statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on May 29, 2014, to be filed with the SEC within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013;

- the description of our common stock in our registration statement on Form 10 filed with the SEC on September 30, 2011, including any amendment or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description; and
- the description of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, in our registration statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on June 14, 2013.

All documents we file with the SEC pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, except as to any portion of any report or document that is not deemed filed under such provisions, (i) on or after the date of filing of the registration statement containing this prospectus and prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement and (ii) on or after the date of this prospectus until the earlier of the date on which all of the securities registered hereunder have been sold or the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part has been withdrawn, shall be deemed incorporated by reference in this prospectus and to be a part of this prospectus from the date of filing of those documents. Nothing in this prospectus shall be deemed to incorporate information furnished but not filed with the SEC pursuant to Item 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K.

These documents may also be accessed on our website at www.sunshineheart.com. Information contained in, or accessible through, our website is not a part of this prospectus.

You may obtain documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus at no cost by writing or telephoning us at the following address:

Sunshine Heart, Inc.
Attention: David A. Rosa, Chief Executive Officer
12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344
Tel: (952) 345-4200

Any statements contained in a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus (or in any other subsequently filed document which also is incorporated by reference in this prospectus) modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed to constitute a part of this prospectus except as so modified or superseded.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act and file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy any reports, proxy statements and other information we file at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the public reference room. You may also access filed documents at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov.

[Table of Contents](#)

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities, and it is not soliciting offers to buy these securities, in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED MARCH 21, 2014

PROSPECTUS

\$40,000,000



Common Stock

We have entered into a sales agreement with Cowen and Company, LLC ("**Cowen**") relating to shares of our common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share, offered by this prospectus. In accordance with the terms of the sales agreement, we may offer and sell from time to time shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$40 million.

Our common stock trades on the NASDAQ Capital Market ("**NASDAQ**") under the symbol "SSH." On March 18, 2014, the last reported sale price for our common stock on NASDAQ was \$6.58 per share.

Upon our delivery of a placement notice and subject to the terms and conditions of the sales agreement, Cowen may sell the common stock by methods deemed to be an "at the market offering" as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), including sales made directly on NASDAQ, on any other existing trading market for the common stock or to or through a market maker. In addition, with our prior written approval, Cowen may also sell the common stock in negotiated transactions. Cowen will act as sales agent using its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable state and federal laws, rules and regulations and the rules of the NASDAQ Stock Market, LLC.

We will pay Cowen a commission for its services in acting as agent and/or principal in the sale of common stock, of up to 3% of the gross sales price per share of all shares sold through it as agent under the sales agreement.

Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-7 of this prospectus, as well as the section captioned “Item 1A—Risk Factors” in our most recently filed annual report on Form 10-K which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for certain risks you should consider.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

Cowen and Company

Prospectus dated , 2014

[Table of Contents](#)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	S-1
SUMMARY	S-2
RISK FACTORS	S-7
FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	S-8
DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK	S-9
USE OF PROCEEDS	S-13
DILUTION	S-14
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	S-14
LEGAL MATTERS	S-15
EXPERTS	S-15
INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE	S-16
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	S-17

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) utilizing a shelf registration process. Under the shelf registration process, we may offer shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$40 million from time to time under this prospectus at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of offering.

The registration statement containing this prospectus, including exhibits to the registration statement, provides additional information about us and the common stock offered under this prospectus. The registration statement can be read on the SEC’s website or at the SEC’s public reading room mentioned under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” in this prospectus.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and in any free writing prospectuses we may provide to you in connection with this offering. We have not, and Cowen has not, authorized any other person to provide you with any information that is different. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are offering to sell, and seeking offers to buy, shares of our common stock only in jurisdictions where offers and sales are permitted. The distribution of this prospectus and the offering of the common stock in certain jurisdictions may be restricted by law. Persons outside the United States who come into possession of this prospectus must inform themselves about, and observe any restrictions relating to, the offering of the common stock and the distribution of this prospectus outside the United States. This prospectus does not constitute, and may not be used in connection with, an offer to sell, or a solicitation of an offer to buy, any securities offered by this prospectus by any person in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such an offer or solicitation.

S - 1

[Table of Contents](#)

SUMMARY

Because this is only a summary, it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. Before you invest, you should carefully read the more detailed information contained in this prospectus and the information incorporated in this prospectus by reference. Our business involves significant risks. You should carefully consider the information under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-7.

As used in this prospectus, unless otherwise indicated, the terms “we,” “us,” “our Company,” “the Company” and “Sunshine Heart” refer to Sunshine Heart, Inc., a Delaware corporation, and its subsidiaries.

All references in this prospectus to “\$” are to U.S. Dollars.

C-Pulse®, Sunshine®, Sunshine Heart™, C-Patch™ and other trademarks or service marks of Sunshine Heart appearing in this prospectus are the property of Sunshine Heart. Trade names, trademarks and service marks of other companies appearing in this registration statement are the property of the respective owners.

We obtained industry and market data used throughout this prospectus through our research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties and industry and general publications. We have not independently verified market and industry data from third-party sources.

Our Company

Overview

We are an early-stage medical device company focused on developing, manufacturing and commercializing our C-Pulse® Heart Assist System (the “C-Pulse System”) for treatment of Class III and ambulatory Class IV heart failure. The C-Pulse System utilizes the scientific principles of intra-aortic balloon counter-pulsation applied in an extra-aortic approach to assist the left ventricle by reducing the workload required to pump blood throughout the body, while increasing blood flow to the coronary arteries.

We are in the process of pursuing regulatory approvals necessary to sell our system in the United States. We completed enrollment of our North American feasibility clinical study in the first half of 2011. In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for the feasibility study and we submitted the clinical data to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the “FDA”). In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an investigational device exemption (“IDE”) application. In October 2012, we announced the results of the 12-month follow-up period for the feasibility study. In November 2012, the FDA provided us with unconditional approval to initiate a pivotal study. Enrollment of our COUNTER HF™ pivotal study commenced in September 2013. We currently expect to complete enrollment of our pivotal study in 2016 and do not anticipate marketing our system in the United States before 2017.

We obtained CE Mark approval for the C-Pulse System in July 2012 and have taken initial steps to evaluate the market potential for our system in targeted countries that accept the CE Mark in anticipation of commencing commercial sales. In order to gain additional clinical data and support reimbursement in Europe, we have initiated a post-market study in Europe which may include data from other geographies (e.g., Canada) that will evaluate endpoints similar to those for our U.S. pivotal study and enrollment under this study commenced in the second quarter of 2013. We do not currently plan to commercialize the C-Pulse System in any European country unless the product is approved for reimbursement. We do not expect to receive reimbursement in Germany before 2015 and cannot be certain of when, or if, we will receive reimbursement in Germany or other targeted countries.

We incurred net losses of \$21.8 million and \$14.1 million in the years ended December 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively. Historically, sales of the C-Pulse System to hospitals and clinics under contract in conjunction with our North American FDA clinical studies have generated all of our revenue. Our C-Pulse System is not approved for commercial sale. However, the FDA has assigned the C-Pulse System to a Category B designation, making it eligible for reimbursement at certain U.S. sites during our clinical studies. Consequently, upon implant of our C-Pulse System, we are able to invoice hospitals and clinics that are eligible for reimbursement by Medicare,

S - 2

[Table of Contents](#)

Medicaid or private insurance companies. We expect to continue to incur significant net losses as we continue to conduct clinical studies and pursue commercialization, and as we ramp up sales of our system.

Our Market Opportunity

Heart failure is one of the leading causes of death in the United States and other developed countries. The American Heart Association estimates that 5.7 million people in the United States age 20 and over are affected by heart failure, with an estimated 670,000 new cases diagnosed each year. Nearly 30% of heart failure patients are below the age of 60, and congestive heart failure is the highest U.S. chronic health care expense category.

Heart failure is a progressive disease caused by impairment of the left heart’s ability to pump blood to the various organs of the body. Patients with heart failure commonly experience shortness of breath, fatigue, difficulty exercising and swelling of the legs. The heart becomes weak or stiff and enlarges over time, making it harder for the left heart to pump the blood needed for the body to function properly. The severity of heart failure depends on how well a person’s heart is able to pump blood throughout the body. A common measure of heart failure severity is the New York Heart Association (the “NYHA”) Class guideline. Patients are classified in Classes I through IV based on their symptoms and functional limitations. Classes I and II include patients with mild heart failure, Class III with moderate heart failure, and Class IV with severe heart failure.

Our C-Pulse System is intended for NYHA Class III and ambulatory Class IV patients. It is estimated that approximately 1.5 million heart failure patients in the United States fall into this classification range, and we believe approximately 3.7 million patients in Europe are similarly affected.

Treatment alternatives currently available for Class III heart failure patients in the United States consist primarily of pharmacological therapies and pacing devices that are designed to address heart rhythm issues. Although these treatments may provide symptomatic relief and prolong the life of patients, they do not often halt the progression of congestive heart failure. Circulatory assist devices, specifically left ventricular assist devices (“LVADs”) have been used to treat Class IV patients in the United States, and one product received FDA approval in the United States for Class IIIb patients although the device is not reimbursed by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services for Class IIIb patients. These devices are designed to take over some or all of the pumping function of the heart by mechanically pumping blood into the aorta. Although such products are effective in increasing blood flow, by design these devices are in contact with the patient’s bloodstream, increasing the risk of adverse events, including thrombosis, bleeding and neurologic events.

Our Strategy

Our goal is to become a market leader in the treatment of moderate to severe heart failure patients through the commercialization of our C-Pulse System, and to continue the development of the system to make it safer and more convenient for patients and physicians. We believe that our technology will provide us with a competitive advantage in the market for treating specific segments of heart failure patients. To achieve our objectives, we intend to:

- *Conduct a Pivotal Study in the United States* - We completed enrollment of the North American feasibility clinical study in the first half of 2011. In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for our North American feasibility clinical study and we submitted the clinical data to the FDA. In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an IDE application. In November 2012, the FDA provided us with unconditional approval to initiate a pivotal study. We commenced enrollment in our COUNTER HF pivotal study in the third quarter of 2013, and currently expect to complete it in 2016.
- *Conduct a Post-Market Study in Europe to Gain Additional Clinical Data* - We have retained consultants to analyze the conditions in various European countries for potential reimbursement for our system and the capabilities of existing hospitals and clinics to implant the C-Pulse System properly and understand the potential benefits of our system. We are targeting the leading LVAD/transplant centers to gain support, promote our technology, and conduct a non-randomized post-market study, the OPTIONS HF study, that will evaluate endpoints similar to those for our U.S. pivotal study to aid our

S - 3

[Table of Contents](#)

reimbursement efforts and gain additional clinical data. We commenced enrollment in second quarter of 2013 and expect to complete enrollment in this study in 2014 in our initial target markets.

- *Prepare for the Commercial Launch of the C-Pulse System in Europe* - We obtained CE Mark approval for the C-Pulse System in July 2012 and have taken initial steps to evaluate the market potential for our system in targeted countries in Europe in anticipation of commencing commercial sales. We initially plan to sell the C-Pulse System in Europe directly and through experienced distributors in countries where our system is approved for reimbursement or where we otherwise believe there might be a potentially profitable market for our system. We expect our initial sales efforts in Europe will focus on Germany and Italy, which we believe are the largest potential markets for the C-Pulse System in Europe and have supported reimbursement for heart failure technologies in the past. We do not expect to receive reimbursement in Germany before 2015 and cannot be certain of when, or if, we will receive reimbursement in Germany or other targeted countries.
- *Continue to Enhance the C-Pulse System* - We believe it will be important to continue refining the C-Pulse System to make it more appealing for both patients and physicians. Since completing our 20-patient North American feasibility study, we have made several improvements to the C-Pulse System based on the feasibility study outcomes and feedback we received from surgeons and patients during the study. These changes include enhancements to our driver, cuff, and Percutaneous Interface Leads (“*PIL*”), among others. We have also completed initial animal studies of a next-generation, fully-implantable C-Pulse System, which would eliminate the risk of exit-site infections.

Our System

The C-Pulse System utilizes the scientific principles of intra-aortic balloon counter-pulsation applied in an extra-aortic approach to assist the left ventricle by reducing the workload required to pump blood throughout the body, while increasing blood flow to the coronary arteries. Combined, these potential benefits may help sustain the patient’s current condition or, in some cases, reverse the heart failure process, thereby potentially preventing the need for later-stage heart failure devices, such as LVADs or artificial hearts, or for transplants. It may also provide relief from the symptoms of Class III and ambulatory Class IV heart failure, and improve quality of life and cardiac function. Based on the results from our feasibility study, we also believe that some patients treated with our C-Pulse System will be able to stop using the device due to sustained improvement in their conditions as a result of the therapy.

Once implanted, the C-Pulse cuff is positioned around the patient’s ascending aorta above the aortic valve. An electrocardiogram sensing lead is then attached to the heart to determine timing for cuff inflation and deflation in synchronization with the heartbeat. As the heart fills with blood, the C-Pulse cuff inflates to push blood from the aorta to the rest of the body and to the heart muscle via the coronary arteries. Just before the heart pumps, the C-Pulse cuff deflates to reduce the heart’s workload through pressure changes, allowing the heart to pump with less effort. The C-Pulse cuff and electrical leads are connected to a single line that is run through the abdominal wall to connect to a power driver outside the body. The system’s single unit driver and battery source are contained inside a carrying bag.

Surgeons in the feasibility phase of our clinical study initially implanted the C-Pulse System in patients via a full sternotomy and then via a mini-thoracotomy. During the feasibility study, this minimally invasive procedure was developed to allow the C-Pulse System to be implanted via a small pacemaker-like incision between the patient’s ribs and sternum, rather than through a full sternotomy. The first implant using this less invasive procedure was completed in 2010. Patients implanted via our minimally invasive procedure typically require a hospital stay of four to seven days in connection with implantation of the C-Pulse System, after which they return home. This compares to an average hospital stay of 14 days for patients implanted with the C-Pulse System via a full sternotomy. Therefore, we believe this less invasive approach can reduce procedural time, hospital stays, overall cost and patient risk as compared to treatment options that require a full sternotomy.

The C-Pulse System distinguishes itself from other mechanical heart failure therapies in two important aspects, which we believe differentiate our system from other products addressing moderate to severe heart failure patients. First, the C-Pulse System is placed outside a patient’s vascular system. The C-Pulse cuff is placed around a

S - 4

[Table of Contents](#)

patient’s ascending aorta and assists the heart’s normal pumping function, rather than being inserted into the vascular system and replacing heart function like other devices such as LVADs. Because the C-Pulse System remains outside the vascular system, there is less risk of complications such as blood clots, stroke

and thrombosis in comparison to other mechanical devices that reside or function inside the vascular system. Because it rests outside the vasculature, it also does not require blood thinning agents that are necessary for patients with devices that are in contact with the bloodstream. As with any implanted device with a percutaneous driver lead, patients using our system have a risk of infection from the implantation procedure or from the driver lead exit site. Any untreated sternal/mediastinal infection arising from the implantation procedure or exit site infection could result in erosion of the aortic wall or an aortic disruption. Because our system has been implanted in a limited number of patients to date, the potential competitive disadvantages and risks associated with the use of our system are not fully known at this time.

Second, once implanted, the C-Pulse System does not need to be in constant operation, and patients can safely turn the device on or off at any time. This feature enables patients to disconnect from the device to perform certain activities such as showering. Patients are not required to visit a medical facility when turning our device on or off or using the device. However, to maximize the benefit from the C-Pulse System, patients are advised to turn off the system only for short periods of time and for specified activities. If the C-Pulse System is not used as directed, patients might experience a return of their heart failure symptoms, a loss of any improvement in their condition resulting from use of our system or an overall worsening of their heart failure symptoms compared to when they began using our system.

Clinical Development

Our North American feasibility clinical study was primarily designed to assess safety and provide indications of performance of the C-Pulse System in moderate to severe heart failure patients who suffer from symptoms such as shortness of breath and reduced mobility. In the first half of 2011, we completed enrollment and implantation of 20 patients in the study and received FDA approval of an expansion protocol to allow us to implant up to 20 additional patients and add two centers to our feasibility study. We have implanted three additional patients with the C-Pulse System since the original 20 patients, one in the United States and two in Canada. We currently do not have plans to implant any additional patients in the United States because the FDA has granted us full approval of the IDE pivotal study.

In November 2011, we announced the preliminary results of the six-month follow-up period for the feasibility study and we submitted the clinical data to the FDA. In July 2012 we also completed a two-year follow-up for a patient implanted with our system. We believe the results of the six-month and 12-month follow-up demonstrate the feasibility of the C-Pulse System implantation procedure and provide indications of safety and efficacy of the C-Pulse System in patients with moderate to severe heart failure necessary to proceed with a pivotal study. In March 2012, the FDA notified us that it completed its review of the C-Pulse System feasibility study data, concluded we met the applicable agency requirements, and indicated that we can move forward with an IDE application.

In November 2012, the FDA provided us with approval to initiate a pivotal study. We commenced enrollment of the COUNTER HF pivotal study in the third quarter of 2013, and we currently expect to complete our pivotal study enrollment in 2016. The COUNTER HF study is designed to enroll 388 patients randomized 1:1 versus optimal medical therapy, at up to 40 participating hospitals and clinics. The primary efficacy endpoint of the study is defined as freedom from worsening heart failure resulting in hospitalization, LVAD implantation, cardiac transplantation or heart failure related death.

Corporate Information

Sunshine Heart, Inc. was incorporated in Delaware on August 22, 2002. We began operating our business in November 1999 through Sunshine Heart Company Pty Ltd., which currently is a wholly owned Australian subsidiary of Sunshine Heart, Inc. In September of 2004, Chess Depository Instruments (“CDIs”) representing beneficial ownership of our common stock began trading on the Australian Securities Exchange (the “ASX”) under the symbol “SHC.” Initially, each CDI represented one share of our common stock. In connection with the 1-for-200 reverse stock split we effected on January 27, 2012, we changed this ratio so that each CDI represented 1/200th of a share of our common stock.

[Table of Contents](#)

On September 30, 2011, we filed a Form 10 registration statement with the SEC, which was declared effective on February 14, 2012. The Form 10 registered our common stock under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Our common stock began trading on NASDAQ on February 16, 2012.

On February 5, 2013, we received conditional approval from the ASX to delist from the official list of the ASX. The delisting occurred at the close of trading on May 6, 2013.

Our principal executive offices are located at 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, Minnesota 55344, and our telephone number is (952) 345-4200. Our website address is www.sunshineheart.com. The information on, or that may be accessed through, our website is not incorporated by reference into and should not be considered a part of this prospectus.

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”). An emerging growth company may take advantage of specified reduced reporting and other burdens that are otherwise applicable generally to U.S. public companies. These provisions include:

- a requirement to have only two years of audited financial statements and only two years of related Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations disclosure; and
- an exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

We may take advantage of these provisions for up to five years or such earlier time that we are no longer an emerging growth company. We will cease to be an emerging growth company if we have more than \$1 billion in annual revenue, have more than \$700 million in market value of our shares of common stock held by non-affiliates, or issue more than \$1 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period. We may choose to take advantage of some but not all of these reduced burdens. In addition, the JOBS Act permits emerging growth companies to take advantage of an extended transition period to comply with new or revised accounting standards applicable to U.S. public companies. We have elected to take advantage of the benefits of this extended transition period, and as a result of this election, our financial statements may not be comparable to those of companies that comply with new or revised accounting standards for U.S. public companies.

The Offering

Common stock offered by us pursuant to this prospectus	Shares having an aggregate offering price of up to \$40 million.
Common stock to be outstanding immediately after this offering assuming the sale of all shares in this offering	Up to 22,951,725 shares, assuming sales at a price of \$6.58 per share, which was the last reported sale price of our common stock on NASDAQ on March 18, 2014. The actual number of shares issued will vary depending on the sales price under this offering.
Manner of offering	“At the market offering” that may be made from time to time through Cowen, our agent. See “Plan of Distribution” on page S-14 of this prospectus.
Use of proceeds	General corporate purposes, including the further development, manufacture and commercialization of our C-Pulse System and for other working capital expenditures.

S - 6

[Table of Contents](#)

Risk factors	Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-7 of this prospectus, as well as the other information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, for a discussion of factors that you should consider before investing in our common stock.
NASDAQ symbol	“SSH.”

The number of shares of our common stock shown above to be outstanding after this offering is based on 16,825,284 shares outstanding as of December 31, 2013. The number of shares of our common stock outstanding as of December 31, 2013, as used throughout this prospectus, unless otherwise indicated, excludes:

- 1,886,579 shares of our common stock subject to options outstanding having a weighted average exercise price of \$8.80 per share as of December 31, 2013;
- restricted stock units representing a total of 84,128 shares of common stock issuable upon vesting as of December 31, 2013;
- 1,630,804 shares of our common stock that have been reserved for issuance upon exercise of outstanding warrants having a weighted average exercise price of \$6.69 per share as of December 31, 2013.

RISK FACTORS

An investment in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. Before deciding whether to invest in our common stock, you should consider carefully the risks described below and discussed under the sections captioned “Risk Factors” contained in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, as well as our subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, which are incorporated by reference herein in their entireties, together with other information in this prospectus, the information and documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and in any free writing prospectus that we have authorized for use in connection with this offering. If any of these risks actually occurs, our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flow could be seriously harmed. This could cause the trading price of our common stock to decline, resulting in a loss of all or part of your investment.

Our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially adversely affected by any of these risks. The trading price of our securities could decline due to any of these risks, and you may lose part or all of your investment. This prospectus and the incorporated documents also contain forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks mentioned below. Forward-looking statements included in this prospectus are based on information available to us on the date hereof, and all forward-looking statements in documents incorporated by reference are based on information available to us as of the dates of such documents. We disclaim any intent to update any forward-looking statements.

Risks Related to this Offering

Resales of our common stock in the public market during this offering by our stockholders may cause the market price of our common stock to fall.

We may issue common stock from time to time in connection with this offering. The issuance from time to time of these new shares of our common stock, or our ability to issue these shares of common stock in this offering, could result in resales of our common stock by our current stockholders concerned about the potential dilution of their holdings. In turn, these resales could have the effect of depressing the market price for our common stock.

S - 7

[Table of Contents](#)

There may be future sales or other dilution of our equity, which may adversely affect the market price of our common stock.

We are generally not restricted from issuing additional common stock, including any securities that are convertible into or exchangeable for, or that represent the right to receive, common stock. The market price of our common stock could decline as a result of sales of common stock or securities that are

convertible into or exchangeable for, or that represent the right to receive, common stock after this offering or the perception that such sales could occur.

We have broad discretion in how we use the net proceeds of this offering, and we may not use these proceeds effectively or in ways with which you agree.

We have not designated any portion of the net proceeds from this offering to be used for any particular purpose. Our management will have broad discretion as to the application of the net proceeds of this offering and may use the net proceeds for purposes other than those contemplated at the time of this offering. Our stockholders may not agree with the manner in which our management chooses to allocate and spend the net proceeds. Moreover, our management may use the net proceeds for corporate purposes that may not increase the market price of our common stock.

Purchasers will experience immediate dilution in the book value per share of the common stock purchased in this offering.

The shares sold in this offering, if any, will be sold from time to time at various prices. However, the expected offering price of our common stock will be substantially higher than the net tangible book value per share of our outstanding common stock. After giving effect to the sale of shares of our common stock in the aggregate amount of \$40 million at an assumed offering price of \$6.58 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on March 18, 2014 on NASDAQ, and after deducting estimated commissions and estimated offering expenses, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of December 31, 2013 would have been approximately \$90.5 million or approximately \$3.95 per share. This represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value of approximately \$0.88 per share to our existing stockholders and an immediate dilution in as adjusted net tangible book value of approximately \$2.63 per share to purchasers of our common stock in this offering.

In addition to this offering, subject to market conditions and other factors, we may pursue additional equity financings in the future, including future public offerings or future private placements of equity securities. Further, the exercise of outstanding options and warrants, the settlement of outstanding restricted stock units in shares of our common stock, and the issuance of any new stock awards under our equity incentive plans, could result in further dilution to investors and any additional shares issued in connection with acquisitions will result in dilution to investors. In addition, the market price of our common stock could fall as a result of resales of any of these shares of common stock due to an increased number of shares available for sale in the market.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The SEC encourages companies to disclose forward-looking information so that investors can better understand a company's future prospects and make informed investment decisions. This prospectus contains such "forward-looking statements" within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. These statements may be made directly in this prospectus, and they may also be made a part of this prospectus by reference to other documents filed with the SEC, which is known as "incorporation by reference."

Words such as "may," "anticipate," "estimate," "expects," "projects," "intends," "plans," "believes" and words and terms of similar substance used in connection with any discussion of future operating or financial performance identify forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements are management's present expectations of future events and are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those described in the forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements might include one or more of the following:

S - 8

[Table of Contents](#)

- anticipated results of financing activities;
- anticipated agreements with marketing partners;
- anticipated clinical study timelines or results;
- anticipated research and product development results;
- projected regulatory timelines;
- descriptions of plans or objectives of management for future operations, products or services;
- forecasts of future economic performance; and
- descriptions or assumptions underlying or relating to any of the above items.

Please also see the discussion of risks and uncertainties under the heading "Risk Factors" beginning on page S-7.

In light of these assumptions, risks and uncertainties, the results and events discussed in the forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus or in any document incorporated by reference might not occur. Investors are cautioned not to place undue reliance on the forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date of this prospectus or the date of the document incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We are not under any obligation, and we expressly disclaim any obligation, to update or alter any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. All subsequent forward-looking statements attributable to Sunshine Heart or to any person acting on its behalf are expressly qualified in their entireties by the cautionary statements contained or referred to in this section.

DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK

The following description of our common stock is a summary only and is qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, both of which are exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, have been filed with the SEC and are available at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov.

General Terms

We have authority to issue up to 100,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. As of March 18, 2014, we had 16,872,698 shares of our common stock outstanding. All outstanding shares of our common stock are fully paid and non-assessable.

The transfer agent and registrar for transfers of shares of our common stock is American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC.

The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate and issue in the future. Subject in all cases to the foregoing limitation, the holders of our common stock have the rights, preferences and privileges below.

Dividends

Holders of our common stock are entitled to receive dividends when and as declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available.

S - 9

[Table of Contents](#)

Voting

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share on each matter properly submitted to our stockholders for their vote; provided however, that except as otherwise required by law, holders of our common stock will not be entitled to vote on any amendment to our certificate of incorporation (including any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock) that relates solely to the terms of a series of outstanding preferred stock if the holders of such affected series are entitled, either separately or together as a class with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon by law or pursuant to our certificate of incorporation (including any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock).

Subject to the voting restrictions described above, holders of our common stock may adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws and/or alter certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation with the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of the voting power of all of the then-outstanding shares of our capital stock entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, in addition to any vote of the holders of a class or series of our stock required by law or our certificate of incorporation. Those provisions of our certificate of incorporation that may be altered only by the super-majority vote described above relate to:

- the number of directors on our board of directors, the classification of our board of directors and the terms of the members of our board of directors;
- the limitations on removal of any of our directors described below under “—Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law;”
- the ability of our directors to fill any vacancy on our board of directors by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors then in office under certain circumstances;
- the ability of our board of directors to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws and the super-majority vote of our stockholders required to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws described above;
- the limitation on action of our stockholders by written action described below under “—Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law;”
- the choice of forum provision described below under “—Choice of Forum;”
- the limitations on director liability and indemnification described below under the heading “—Limitation on Liability of Directors and Indemnification;” and
- the super-majority voting requirement to amend our certificate of incorporation described above.

Conversion, Redemption and Preemptive Rights

Holders of our common stock do not have any conversion, redemption or preemptive rights pursuant to our organizational documents.

Liquidation, Dissolution and Winding-up

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common stock are entitled to share ratably in any assets remaining after the satisfaction in full of the prior rights of creditors and the aggregate of any liquidation preference pursuant to the terms of any certificate of designation filed with respect to any series of preferred stock.

S - 10

[Table of Contents](#)

Anti-Takeover Effects of Certain Provisions of Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, Our Stockholder Rights Plan, and Delaware Law

Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws may be considered to have an anti-takeover effect, such as those provisions:

- providing for our board of directors to be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms, with only one class of directors being elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders and the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms;
- authorizing our board of directors to issue from time to time any series of preferred stock and fix the voting powers, designation, powers, preferences and rights of the shares of such series of preferred stock;
- prohibiting stockholders from acting by written consent in lieu of a meeting;
- requiring advance notice of stockholder intention to put forth director nominees or bring up other business at a stockholders' meeting;
- prohibiting stockholders from calling a special meeting of stockholders;
- requiring a 66 2/3% super-majority stockholder approval in order for stockholders to alter, amend or repeal certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation;
- requiring a 66 2/3% super-majority stockholder approval in order for stockholders to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws;
- providing that, subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock to elect additional directors under specified circumstances, neither the board of directors nor any individual director may be removed without cause;
- creating the possibility that our board of directors could prevent a coercive takeover of our Company due to the significant amount of authorized, but unissued shares of our common stock and preferred stock;
- providing that, subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock, the number of directors shall be fixed from time to time exclusively by our board of directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors; and
- providing that any vacancies on our board of directors under certain circumstances will be filled only by a majority of our board of directors then in office, even if less than a quorum, and not by the stockholders.

Stockholder Rights Plan

On June 14, 2013, the Company adopted a stockholder rights plan (the "**Rights Plan**"), which entitles the holders of the rights to purchase from the Company 1/1,000th of a share of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, at a purchase price of \$35.00 per share, as adjusted (a "**Right**"), upon certain trigger events. In connection therewith, on June 14, 2013, the Company's board of directors authorized 30,000 shares of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock and it declared a dividend of one Right per each share of common stock of the Company outstanding as of June 24, 2013. Each 1/1,000th of a share of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock has terms that are substantially the economic and voting equivalent of one share of the Company's common stock. However, until a Right is exercised or exchanged in accordance with the provisions of

S - 11

[Table of Contents](#)

the Rights Plan, the holder thereof will have no rights as a stockholder of the Company, including, but not limited to, the right to vote for the election of directors or upon any matter submitted to stockholders of the Company. The Rights Plan has a three-year term and the board of directors may terminate the Rights Plan at any time (subject to the redemption of the Rights for a nominal value). The Rights may cause substantial dilution to a person or group (together with all affiliates and associates of such person or group and any person or group of persons acting in concert therewith) that acquires beneficial ownership of 15% or more of the Company's stock on terms not approved by the board of directors or takes other specified actions.

Delaware Law

We are also subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended (the "**DGCL**"), which generally prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any business combination with any interested stockholder for a period of three years following the date that the stockholder became an interested stockholder, unless:

- prior to that date, our board of directors approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon consummation of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of our voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding for purposes of determining the number of shares outstanding (but not the outstanding voting stock owned by the interested stockholder) those shares owned by (i) persons who are directors and also officers and (ii) employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- on or subsequent to that date, the business combination is approved by our board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

In general, Section 203 of the DGCL defines an interested stockholder as an entity or person beneficially owning 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of the corporation and any entity or person affiliated with or controlling or controlled by any of these entities or persons.

The above-summarized provisions of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, the Rights Plan and the above-summarized provisions of the DGCL could make it more difficult to acquire us by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise, or to remove incumbent officers and directors. These provisions are expected to discourage certain types of coercive takeover practices and takeover bids that our board of directors may consider inadequate and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our

ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure us outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging takeover or acquisition proposals because, among other things, negotiation of these proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

Choice of Forum

Our certificate of incorporation provides that, unless we consent in writing otherwise, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for any (i) derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (ii) action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty owed by any of our directors, officers or other employees to us or any of our stockholders; (iii) action asserting a claim pursuant to the DGCL; or (iv) action asserting a claim that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine.

S - 12

[Table of Contents](#)

Limitation on Liability of Directors and Indemnification

Our certificate of incorporation limits the liability of our directors to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that directors of a corporation will not be personally liable for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duties as directors, except for liability for any:

- breach of their duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- unlawful payment of dividends or redemption of shares as provided in Section 174 of the DGCL; or
- transaction from which the directors derived an improper personal benefit.

These limitations of liability do not apply to liabilities arising under federal securities laws and do not affect the availability of equitable remedies such as injunctive relief or rescission.

Our bylaws provide that we will indemnify and advance expenses to our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by law or, if applicable, pursuant to indemnification agreements. They further provide that we may choose to indemnify our other employees or agents from time to time. Subject to certain exceptions and procedures, our bylaws also require us to advance to any person who was or is a party, or is threatened to be made a party, to any proceeding by reason of the person's service as one of our directors or officers all expenses incurred by the person in connection with such proceeding.

Section 145(g) of the DGCL and our bylaws also permit us to secure insurance on behalf of any officer, director, employee or other agent for any liability arising out of his or her actions in connection with their services to us, regardless of whether our bylaws permit indemnification. We maintain a directors' and officers' liability insurance policy.

We entered into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers that provide, in general, that we will indemnify them to the fullest extent permitted by law in connection with their service to us or on our behalf and, subject to certain exceptions and procedures, that we will advance to them all expenses that they incur in connection with any proceeding to which they are, or are threatened to be made, a party.

At present, there is no pending litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors or officers as to which indemnification is required or permitted, and we are not aware of any threatened litigation or proceeding that may result in a claim for indemnification.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Company pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the Company has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

Listing

Our common stock is listed on NASDAQ under the symbol "SSH." CDIs representing beneficial ownership of our common stock traded on the ASX from September 2004 until the Company's delisting from the ASX, which occurred at the close of trading on May 6, 2013.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We will retain broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from our sale of securities offered hereby. Except as described in any prospectus supplement, we currently anticipate using the net proceeds from our sale of securities offered hereby primarily for general corporate purposes, including the further development, manufacture and commercialization of our C-Pulse System and for other working capital expenditures.

S - 13

[Table of Contents](#)

DILUTION

If you invest in our common stock, your interest will be diluted immediately to the extent of the difference between the public offering price per share and the adjusted net tangible book value per share of our common stock after this offering.

The net tangible book value of our common stock as of December 31, 2013, was approximately \$51.7 million, or approximately \$3.07 per share. Net tangible book value per share represents the amount of our total tangible assets, excluding goodwill and intangible assets, less total liabilities, divided by the total number of shares of our common stock outstanding. Dilution per share to new investors represents the difference between the amount per share paid by

purchasers for each share of common stock in this offering and the net tangible book value per share of our common stock immediately following the completion of this offering.

After giving effect to the sale of shares of our common stock in the aggregate amount of \$40 million at an assumed offering price of \$6.58 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on March 18, 2014 on NASDAQ, and after deducting estimated commissions and estimated offering expenses, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of December 31, 2013 would be approximately \$90.5 million or approximately \$3.95 per share. This represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value of approximately \$0.88 per share to our existing stockholders and an immediate dilution in as adjusted net tangible book value of approximately \$2.63 per share to purchasers of our common stock in this offering, as illustrated by the following table:

Assumed public offering price per share		\$	6.58
Net tangible book value per share as of December 31, 2013	\$	3.07	
Increase per share attributable to this offering	\$	0.88	
As adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering		\$	3.95
Dilution per share to new investors		\$	2.63

The table above assumes, for illustrative purposes only, an aggregate of 6,079,027 shares of our common stock are sold at a price of \$6.58 per share, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$40 million. The shares, if any, sold in this offering will be sold from time to time at various prices. An increase of \$1.00 per share in the price at which the shares are sold from the assumed offering price of \$6.58 per share shown in the table above, assuming all of our common stock in the aggregate amount of approximately \$40 million is sold at that price, would increase our adjusted net tangible book value per share after the offering to \$4.09 per share and would increase the dilution in net tangible book value per share to new investors in this offering to \$3.49 per share, after deducting commissions and estimated aggregate offering expenses payable by us. A decrease of \$1.00 per share in the price at which the shares are sold from the assumed offering price of \$6.58 per share shown in the table above, assuming all of our common stock in the aggregate amount of approximately \$40.0 million is sold at that price, would increase our adjusted net tangible book value per share after the offering to \$3.77 per share and would decrease the dilution in net tangible book value per share to new investors in this offering to \$1.81 per share, after deducting commissions and estimated aggregate offering expenses payable by us. This information is supplied for illustrative purposes only.

There will be further dilution to new investors to the extent that any options or warrants are exercised, any restricted stock units are settled in shares of our common stock, any new stock awards are issued under our equity incentive plans, or we otherwise issue additional shares of common stock in the future.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We have entered into a sales agreement with Cowen under which we may issue and sell from time to time up to \$40 million of our common stock through Cowen as our sales agent. Sales of the common stock, if any, will be made at market prices by any method that is deemed to be an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on NASDAQ and any other trading market for the common stock, and sales to or through a market maker other than on an exchange. In addition, with our prior written consent, Cowen may also sell our common stock in negotiated transactions.

S - 14

[Table of Contents](#)

Cowen will offer the common stock subject to the terms and conditions of the sales agreement on a daily basis or as otherwise agreed upon by us and Cowen. We will designate the maximum amount of common stock to be sold through Cowen on a daily basis or otherwise determine such maximum amount together with Cowen. Subject to the terms and conditions of the sales agreement, Cowen will use its commercially reasonable efforts to sell on our behalf all of the shares of common stock requested to be sold by us. We may instruct Cowen not to sell common stock if the sales cannot be effected at or above the price designated by us in any such instruction. We or Cowen may suspend the offering of the common stock being made through Cowen under the sales agreement upon proper notice to the other party. We and Cowen each have the right, by giving written notice as specified in the sales agreement, to terminate the sales agreement in each of our sole discretion at any time.

The aggregate compensation payable to Cowen as sales agent shall be up to 3% of the gross sales price of the shares sold through it pursuant to the sales agreement.

The remaining sales proceeds, after deducting any expenses payable by us and any transaction fees imposed by any governmental, regulatory or self-regulatory organization in connection with the sales, will equal our net proceeds for the sale of such common stock.

Cowen will provide written confirmation to us following the close of trading on NASDAQ, each day in which common stock is sold through it as sales agent under the sales agreement. Each confirmation will include the number of shares of common stock sold through it as sales agent on that day, the gross sales price per share, the net proceeds to us and the compensation payable by us to Cowen.

We will report at least quarterly the number of shares of common stock sold through Cowen under the sales agreement, the net proceeds to us and the compensation paid by us to Cowen in connection with the sales of common stock.

Settlement for sales of common stock will occur, unless we and Cowen agree otherwise, on the third business day that is also a trading day following the date on which any sales were made in return for payment of the net proceeds to us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in an escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

In connection with the sales of the common stock on our behalf, Cowen may be deemed to be an “underwriter” within the meaning of the Securities Act, and the compensation paid to Cowen may be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have agreed in the sales agreement to provide indemnification and contribution to Cowen against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. As sales agent, Cowen will not engage in any transactions that stabilize our common stock.

We estimate that the total expenses of the offering payable by us, excluding commissions payable to Cowen under the sales agreement, will be approximately \$165,000.

LEGAL MATTERS

The legality of the issuance of the common stock offered hereby is being passed upon for us by Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP. Cowen is being represented in connection with this offering by LeClairRyan, A Professional Corporation.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Sunshine Heart, Inc. and subsidiaries appearing in Sunshine Heart, Inc.'s Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended December 31, 2013, have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon (which contains an explanatory paragraph describing conditions that raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern as described in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements), incorporated by reference therein,

S - 15

[Table of Contents](#)

and incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements are incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

We "incorporate by reference" certain documents that we have filed with the SEC into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is deemed to be part of this prospectus, except for any information superseded by information contained directly in this prospectus. This prospectus incorporates by reference our:

- Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2014;
- the information specifically incorporated by reference into our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013 from our definitive Proxy Statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on May 29, 2014, to be filed with the SEC within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013;
- the description of our common stock in our registration statement on Form 10 filed with the SEC on September 30, 2011, including any amendment or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description; and
- the description of our Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, in our registration statement on Form 8-A filed with the SEC on June 14, 2013.

All documents we file with the SEC pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, except as to any portion of any report or document that is not deemed filed under such provisions, on or after the date of filing of the registration statement containing this prospectus until the earlier of the date on which all of the securities registered hereunder have been sold or the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part has been withdrawn, shall be deemed incorporated by reference in this prospectus and to be a part of this prospectus from the date of filing of those documents. Nothing in this prospectus shall be deemed to incorporate information furnished but not filed with the SEC pursuant to Item 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K.

These documents may also be accessed on our website at www.sunshineheart.com. Information contained in, or accessible through, our website is not a part of this prospectus.

You may obtain documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus at no cost by writing or telephoning us at the following address:

Sunshine Heart, Inc.
Attention: David A. Rosa, Chief Executive Officer
12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344
Tel: (952) 345-4200

Any statements contained in a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus (or in any other subsequently filed document which also is incorporated by reference in this prospectus) modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed to constitute a part of this prospectus except as so modified or superseded.

S - 16

[Table of Contents](#)

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act and file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy any reports, proxy statements and other information we file at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the public reference room. You may also access filed documents at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov.

S - 17

[Table of Contents](#)

\$40,000,000



Common Stock

PROSPECTUS

, 2014

Cowen and Company

[Table of Contents](#)

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

ITEM 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

The following table sets forth various expenses in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities being registered. All of the amounts shown are estimates except for the Securities and Exchange Commission Registration Fee.

Securities and Exchange Commission Registration Fee	\$	14,103
Accounting fees	\$	25,000
Printing fees and expenses	\$	10,000
Legal fees and disbursements	\$	100,000
Miscellaneous	\$	15,897
Total:	\$	165,000

ITEM 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that each person who was or is made a party or is threatened to be made a party to or is otherwise involved (including, without limitation, as a witness) in any action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative, by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or an officer of Sunshine Heart, Inc. or is or was serving at our request as a director, officer, or trustee of another corporation, or of a partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan, whether the basis of such proceeding is alleged action in an official capacity as a director, officer or trustee or in any other capacity while serving as a director, officer or trustee, shall be indemnified and held harmless by us to the fullest extent authorized by the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended (the "DGCL"), against all expense, liability and loss (including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines, ERISA excise taxes or penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred or suffered by such.

Section 145 of the DGCL permits a corporation to indemnify any director or officer of the corporation against expenses (including attorney's fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred in connection with any action, suit or proceeding brought by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director or officer of the corporation, if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he or she reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, if he or she had no reason to believe his or her conduct was unlawful. In a derivative action, (i.e., one brought by or on behalf of the corporation), indemnification may be provided only for expenses actually and reasonably incurred by any director or officer in connection with the defense or settlement of such an action or suit if such person acted in good faith and in a manner that he or she reasonably believed to be in, or not opposed to, the best interests of the corporation, except that no indemnification shall be provided if such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which the action or suit was brought shall determine that the defendant is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses despite such adjudication of liability.

Pursuant to Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL, our certificate of incorporation eliminates the liability of a director to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for such a breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liabilities arising:

- from any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- from acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- under Section 174 of the DGCL; and
- from any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

[Table of Contents](#)

We carry insurance policies insuring our directors and officers against certain liabilities that they may incur in their capacities as directors and officers.

The Company has entered into indemnification agreements with each of its directors and executive officers. Pursuant to the indemnification agreements, the Company agrees to hold harmless and indemnify its directors and executive officers to the fullest extent authorized or permitted by the provisions of the Company's certificate of incorporation and bylaws and the DGCL, including for any amounts that such director or officer becomes obligated to pay because of any claim to which such director or officer is made or threatened to be made a party, witness or participant, by reason of such director's or officer's service as a director, officer, employee or other agent of the Company.

There are certain exceptions from the Company's obligation to indemnify its directors and executive officers pursuant to the indemnification agreements, including for "short-swing" profit claims under Section 16(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, losses that result from conduct that is established by a final judgment as knowingly fraudulent or deliberately dishonest or that constituted willful misconduct, or that constituted a breach of the duty of loyalty to the Company or resulted in any improper personal profit or advantage, where payment is actually made to a director or officer under an insurance policy, indemnity clause, bylaw or agreement, except in respect of any excess beyond payment under such insurance, clause, bylaw or agreement, for indemnification which is not lawful, or in connection with any proceeding initiated by such director or officer, or any proceeding against the Company or its directors, officers, employees or other agents, unless (i) such indemnification is expressly required to be made by law, (ii) the proceeding was authorized by the board of directors of the Company, (iii) such indemnification is provided by the Company, in its sole discretion, pursuant to the powers vested in the Company under the DGCL, or (iv) the proceeding is initiated to enforce a claim for indemnification pursuant to the indemnification agreement.

All agreements and obligations of the Company contained in the indemnification agreements shall continue during the period when the director or officer who is a party to an indemnification agreement is a director, officer, employee or other agent of the Company (or is or is serving at the request of the Company as a director, officer, employee or other agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise) and shall continue thereafter so long as such director or officer shall be subject to any possible claim or threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, arbitrational, administrative or investigative. In addition, the indemnification agreements provide for partial indemnification and advance of expenses.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to our directors, officers or controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act, and is, therefore, unenforceable.

ITEM 16. Exhibits.

The following exhibits are incorporated by reference or filed herewith and made a part of this registration statement.

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated By Reference			Exhibit Number	Filed Herewith
		Form	File Number	Date of First Filing		
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement *					
1.2	Sales Agreement, dated March 21, 2014, by and between Sunshine Heart, Inc. and Cowen and Company, LLC					X

[Table of Contents](#)

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated By Reference			Exhibit Number	Filed Herewith
		Form	File Number	Date of First Filing		
3.1	Certificate of Incorporation, as amended	10	001-35312	February 1, 2012	3.1	
3.2	Amended and Restated Bylaws	10	001-35312	September 30, 2011	3.2	
4.1	Specimen of Common Stock Certificate	10	001-35312	September 30, 2011	4.1	
4.2	Form of Certificate of Designations of Series A Junior Participating Preferred Stock of Sunshine Heart, Inc.	8-K	001-35312	June 14, 2013	3.1	
4.3	Rights Agreement dated June 14, 2013 by and between Sunshine Heart, Inc. and American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC, as Rights Agent	8-K	001-35312	June 14, 2013	4.1	
4.4	Form of Specimen Preferred Stock					

	Certificate and Form of Certificate of Designation of Preferred Stock *	
4.5	Form of Senior Debt Indenture	X
4.6	Form of Subordinated Debt Indenture	X
4.7	Form of Senior Note *	
4.8	Form of Subordinated Note *	
4.9	Form of Common Stock Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate	X
4.10	Form of Preferred Stock Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate	X

II - 3

[Table of Contents](#)

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated By Reference			Filed Herewith
		Form	File Number	Date of First Filing	
4.11	Form of Debt Securities Warrant Agreement and Warrant Certificate				X
5.1	Opinion of Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP relating to base prospectus				X
5.2	Opinion of Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP relating to sales agreement prospectus				X
12.1	Statements re Computation of Ratios *				
23.1	Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm				X
23.2	Consent of Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP with respect to filing of opinion relating to base prospectus				Included in Exhibit 5.1
23.3	Consent of Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP with respect to filing of opinion relating to sales agreement prospectus				Included in Exhibit 5.2
24.1	Power of Attorney				Included in signature page
25.1	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee under Senior Debt Indenture *				
25.2	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee under Subordinated Debt Indenture *				

* If required, to be filed by amendment or as an exhibit to a report filed under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and incorporated herein by reference.

II - 4

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 17. Undertakings.

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
 - (i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

- (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and
- (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

Provided however, that the undertakings set forth in paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii) and (a)(1)(iii) above do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to section 13 or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:
 - (i)
 - (A) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
 - (B) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a

[Table of Contents](#)

new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities: The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
 - (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
 - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
 - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
 - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (6) That, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (7) To file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

[Table of Contents](#)

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Eden Prairie, State of Minnesota, on March 21, 2014.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: /s/ DAVID A. ROSA
 David A. Rosa
 Chief Executive Officer

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints David A. Rosa and Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, and each of them, with full power of substitution, his true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent to do any and all acts and things in his name and on his behalf in his capacity indicated below which they or either of them may deem necessary or advisable to enable Sunshine Heart, Inc. to comply with the Securities Act of 1933 and any rules, regulations and requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, in connection with this registration statement including specifically, power and authority to sign for him in his name in the capacities stated below, any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) thereto, granting unto said attorney-in-fact and agent full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in such connection, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact and agent, or his substitute or substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/S/ DAVID A. ROSA</u> David A. Rosa	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director (principal executive officer)	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ JEFFREY S. MATHIESEN</u> Jeffrey S. Mathiesen	Chief Financial Officer (principal financial and accounting officer)	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ PAUL R. BUCKMAN</u> Paul R. Buckman	Director	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ GEOFFREY E. BROOKE</u> Geoffrey E. Brooke	Director	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ JOHN L. ERB</u> John L. Erb	Director	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ JON W. SALVESON</u> Jon W. Salvesson	Director	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ GREGORY D. WALLER</u> Gregory D. Waller	Director	March 21, 2014
<u>/S/ WARREN S. WATSON</u> Warren S. Watson	Director	March 21, 2014

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

\$40,000,000

SALES AGREEMENT

March 21, 2014

Cowen and Company, LLC
599 Lexington Avenue
New York, NY 10022

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Sunshine Heart, Inc. (the "**Company**"), confirms its agreement (this "**Agreement**") with Cowen and Company, LLC ("**Cowen**"), as follows:

1. **Issuance and Sale of Shares.** The Company agrees that, from time to time during the term of this Agreement, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, it may issue and sell through Cowen, acting as agent and/or principal, shares of the Company's common stock, par value 0.0001 per share (the "**Common Stock**") having an aggregate offering price of up to \$40,000,000. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the parties hereto agree that compliance with the limitation set forth in this **Section 1** on the number of Common Stock issued and sold under this Agreement shall be the sole responsibility of the Company, and Cowen shall have no obligation in connection with such compliance. The issuance and sale of Common Stock through Cowen will be effected pursuant to the Registration Statement (as defined below) filed by the Company and declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**"), although nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as requiring the Company to use the Registration Statement (as defined below) to issue the Common Stock.

The Company shall file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the "**Securities Act**"), with the Commission a registration statement on Form S-3, including one or more base prospectuses relating to certain securities, including the Common Stock, to be issued from time to time by the Company, and which incorporates by reference documents that the Company has filed or will file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the "**Exchange Act**"). The Company may prepare a prospectus supplement specifically relating to the Common Stock (the "**Prospectus Supplement**") to the base prospectus included as part of such registration statement. The Company has furnished to Cowen, for use by Cowen, copies of the prospectus included as part of such registration statement, as supplemented, if at all, by the Prospectus Supplement, relating to the Common Stock to be issued from time to time by the Company pursuant to this Agreement. Except where the context otherwise requires, such registration statement, as amended when it

became effective, including all documents filed as part thereof or incorporated by reference therein, and including any information contained in a Prospectus (as defined below) subsequently filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act or deemed to be a part of such registration statement pursuant to Rule 430B or 462(b) of the Securities Act, is herein called the "**Registration Statement**." The prospectus specifically relating to the Common Stock to be issued from time to time by the Company pursuant to this Agreement, including all documents incorporated therein by reference, included in the Registration Statement, as it may be supplemented by the Prospectus Supplement, in the form in which such prospectus and/or Prospectus Supplement have most recently been filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, together with any "issuer free writing prospectus," as defined in Rule 433 of the Securities Act regulations ("**Rule 433**"), relating to the Common Stock available for sale pursuant to this Agreement that (i) is required to be filed with the Commission by the Company or (ii) is exempt from filing pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i), in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company's records pursuant to Rule 433(g), is herein called the "**Prospectus**." Any reference herein to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to refer to and include the documents incorporated by reference therein, and any reference herein to the terms "amend," "amendment" or "supplement" with respect to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the filing after the execution hereof of any document with the Commission deemed to be incorporated by reference therein. For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or to any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to include any copy filed with the Commission pursuant to either the Electronic Data Gathering Analysis and Retrieval System or Interactive Data Electronic Applications (collectively "**IDEA**").

2. **Placements.** Each time that the Company wishes to issue and sell the Common Stock hereunder (each, a "**Placement**"), it will notify Cowen by email notice (or other method mutually agreed to in writing by the parties) (a "**Placement Notice**") containing the parameters in accordance with which it desires the shares of Common Stock to be sold, which shall at a minimum include the number/amount of shares of Common Stock to be issued (the "**Placement Shares**"), the time period during which sales are requested to be made, any limitation on the number/amount of shares of Common Stock that may be sold in any one Trading Day (as defined in **Section 3**) and any minimum price below which sales may not be made, a form of which containing such minimum sales parameters necessary is attached hereto as **Schedule 1**. The Placement Notice shall originate from any of the individuals from the Company set forth on **Schedule 2** (with a copy to each of the other individuals from the Company listed on such schedule), and shall be addressed to each of the individuals from Cowen set forth on **Schedule 2**, as such **Schedule 2** may be amended in writing from time to time. The Placement Notice shall be effective upon receipt by Cowen unless and until (i) in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in **Section 4**, Cowen declines to accept the terms contained therein for any reason, in its sole discretion, (ii) the entire amount of the Placement Shares have been sold, (iii) in accordance with the notice requirements set forth in **Section 4**, the Company suspends or terminates the Placement Notice for any reason in the Company's sole and absolute discretion, (iv) the Company issues a subsequent Placement Notice with parameters superseding those on the earlier dated Placement Notice, or (v) this Agreement has been terminated under the provisions of **Section 11**. The amount of any discount, commission or other compensation to be

Placement Shares unless and until the Company delivers a Placement Notice to Cowen and Cowen does not decline such Placement Notice pursuant to the terms set forth above, and then only upon the terms specified therein and herein. In the event of a conflict between the terms of this Agreement and the terms of a Placement Notice, the terms of the Placement Notice will control.

3. Sale of Placement Shares by Cowen. Subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, upon the Company's issuance of a Placement Notice, and unless the sale of the Placement Shares described therein has been declined, suspended, or otherwise terminated in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, Cowen, for the period specified in the Placement Notice, will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable state and federal laws, rules and regulations and the rules of the Nasdaq Stock Market, LLC ("**Nasdaq**") to sell such Placement Shares up to the amount specified, and otherwise in accordance with the terms of such Placement Notice. Cowen will provide written confirmation to the Company (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the Company set forth on Schedule 2, if receipt of such correspondence is actually acknowledged by any of the individuals to whom the notice is sent, other than via auto-reply) no later than the opening of the Trading Day (as defined below) immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Placement Shares hereunder setting forth the number of Placement Shares sold on such day, the compensation payable by the Company to Cowen pursuant to Section 2 with respect to such sales, and the Net Proceeds (as defined below) payable to the Company, with an itemization of the deductions made by Cowen (as set forth in Section 5(a)) from the gross proceeds that it receives from such sales. Subject to the terms of the Placement Notice, Cowen may sell Placement Shares by any method permitted by law deemed to be an "at the market" offering as defined in Rule 415 of the Securities Act, including without limitation sales made through the Nasdaq Capital Market, on any other existing trading market for the Common Stock or to or through a market maker. If expressly authorized by the Company in a Placement Notice, Cowen may also sell Placement Shares in negotiated transactions. Cowen shall not purchase Placement Shares for its own account as principal unless expressly authorized to do so by the Company in a Placement Notice. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) there can be no assurance that Cowen will be successful in selling Placement Shares, and (ii) Cowen will incur no liability or obligation to the Company or any other person or entity if it does not sell Placement Shares for any reason other than a failure by Cowen to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable law and regulations to sell such Placement Shares as required under this Section 3. During the term of this Agreement and notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, Cowen agrees that in no event will Cowen or its affiliates engage in any market making, bidding, stabilization or other trading activity with regard to the Common Stock or related derivative securities if such activity would be prohibited under Regulation M or other anti-manipulation rules under the Securities Act. For the purposes hereof, "**Trading Day**" means any day on which the Company's Common Stock is purchased and sold on the principal market on which the Common Stock is listed or quoted.

3

4. Suspension of Sales.

The Company or Cowen may, upon notice to the other party in writing (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 2, if receipt of such correspondence is actually acknowledged by any of the individuals to whom the notice is sent, other than via auto-reply) or by telephone (confirmed immediately by verifiable facsimile transmission or email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 2), suspend any sale of Placement Shares; *provided, however*, that such suspension shall not affect or impair either party's obligations with respect to any Placement Shares sold hereunder prior to the receipt of such notice. Each of the Parties agrees that no such notice under this Section 4 shall be effective against the other unless it is made to one of the individuals named on Schedule 2 hereto, as such schedule may be amended from time to time.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, during any period in which the Company is in possession of material non-public information, the Company and Cowen agree that (i) no sale of Placement Shares will take place, (ii) the Company shall not request the sale of any Placement Shares, and (iii) Cowen shall not be obligated to sell or offer to sell any Placement Shares.

(b) If either Cowen or the Company has reason to believe that the exemptive provisions set forth in Rule 101(c)(1) of Regulation M under the Exchange Act are not satisfied with respect to the Common Stock, it shall promptly notify the other party, and Cowen may, at its sole discretion, suspend sales of the Placement Shares under this Agreement. Cowen shall calculate on a weekly basis the average daily trading volume (as defined by Rule 100 of Regulation M under the Exchange Act) of the Common Stock.

5. Settlement.

(a) Settlement of Placement Shares. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable Placement Notice, settlement for sales of Placement Shares will occur on the third (3rd) Trading Day (or such earlier day as is industry practice for regular-way trading) following the date on which such sales are made (each, a "**Settlement Date**"). The amount of proceeds to be delivered to the Company on a Settlement Date against receipt of the Placement Shares sold (the "**Net Proceeds**") will be equal to the aggregate sales price received by Cowen at which such Placement Shares were sold, after deduction for (i) Cowen's commission, discount or other compensation for such sales payable by the Company pursuant to Section 2 hereof, (ii) any other amounts due and payable by the Company to Cowen hereunder pursuant to Section 7(g) (Expenses) hereof, and (iii) any transaction fees imposed by any governmental or self-regulatory organization in respect of such sales.

(b) Delivery of Placement Shares. On or before each Settlement Date, the Company will, or will cause its transfer agent to, electronically transfer the Placement Shares being sold by crediting Cowen's or its designee's account (provided Cowen shall have given the Company written notice of such designee prior to the Settlement Date) at The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit and Withdrawal at Custodian System or by such other means of delivery as may be mutually agreed upon by the parties hereto which in all cases shall be freely tradeable, transferable, registered shares in good deliverable form. On each Settlement Date, Cowen will deliver the related Net Proceeds in same day funds to an account designated by the Company on,

4

or prior to, the Settlement Date. The Company agrees that if the Company, or its transfer agent (if applicable), defaults in its obligation to deliver duly authorized Placement Shares on a Settlement Date, the Company agrees that in addition to and in no way limiting the rights and obligations set forth in Section 9(a) (Indemnification and Contribution) hereto, it will (i) hold Cowen harmless against any loss, claim, damage, or expense (including reasonable legal fees and expenses), as incurred, arising out of or in connection with such default by the Company and (ii) pay to Cowen any commission, discount, or other compensation to which it would otherwise have been entitled absent such default.

6. Representations and Warranties of the Company.

(a) The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with, Cowen that as of the date of this Agreement and as of each Applicable Time (as defined in Section 20(a)):

(i) The Registration Statement and any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement has been declared effective by the Commission under the Securities Act. The Company has complied to the Commission's satisfaction with all requests of the Commission for additional or supplemental information. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement is in effect and no proceedings for such purpose have been instituted or are pending or, to the best knowledge of the Company, are contemplated or threatened by the Commission.

(ii) Each part of the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto, at the time such part became effective (including each deemed effective date with respect to Cowen pursuant to Rule 430B or otherwise under the Securities Act), at all other subsequent times until the completion of Cowen's distribution of the Common Stock, and the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus), at the time of filing or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act, at all subsequent times until the completion of Cowen's distribution of the Common Stock complied and will comply in all material respects with the applicable requirements and provisions of the Securities Act, the Rules and Regulations and the Exchange Act and did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus, as amended or supplemented, as of its date, or the time of first use within the meaning of the Securities Act, at all subsequent times until the completion of Cowen's distribution of the Common Stock, did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The representations and warranties set forth in the two immediately preceding sentences do not apply to statements in or omissions from the Registration Statement, any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, or any post-effective amendment thereto, or the Prospectus, or any amendments or supplements thereto, made in reliance upon and in conformity

5

with written information relating to Cowen furnished to the Company by Cowen, specifically for use in the preparation thereof.

(iii) At the earliest time after the filing of the Registration Statement that the Company or another offering participant made a bona fide offer (within the meaning of Rule 164(h)(2) under the Securities Act) of the Common Stock and (2) at the date hereof, the Company was not and is not an "ineligible issuer," as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act, including the Company or any subsidiary in the preceding three years not having been convicted of a felony or misdemeanor or having been made the subject of a judicial or administrative decree or order as described in Rule 405 under the Securities Act (without taking account of any determination by the Commission pursuant to Rule 405 that it is not necessary that the Company be considered an ineligible issuer), nor an "excluded issuer" as defined in Rule 164 under the Securities Act.

(iv) (1) The consolidated financial statements of the Company and Sunshine Heart Company Pty. Limited, a proprietary limited company registered under the Australian Corporations Act 2001 (Cth) (the "**Corporations Act**") and a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company (the "**Subsidiary**"), together with the related notes, set forth or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus comply in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act and fairly present the financial condition of the Company and its consolidated Subsidiary as of the dates indicated and the results of operations and changes in cash flows for the periods therein specified in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States consistently applied throughout the periods involved; the supporting schedules included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement present fairly the information required to be stated therein; all non-GAAP financial information included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus complies with the requirements of Regulation G and Item 10 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act; and, except as disclosed in the Prospectus, there are no material off-balance sheet arrangements (as defined in Regulation S-K under the Securities Act, Item 303(a)(4)(ii)) or any other relationships with unconsolidated entities or other persons, that may have a material current or, to the Company's knowledge, material future effect on the Company's financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources or significant components of revenue or expenses. No other financial statements or schedules are required to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, or the Prospectus. Ernst & Young LLP, which has expressed its opinion with respect to the financial statements and schedules filed as a part of or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, is (x) an independent public accounting firm with respect to the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act, (y) a registered public accounting firm (as defined in Section 2(a)(12) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the "**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**")) and (z) in performing

6

its work for the Company, not in violation of the auditor independence requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

(v) Each of the Company and the Subsidiary has been duly organized and is validly existing as a corporation or similar entity in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of incorporation (to the extent such status is possible in the jurisdiction of incorporation). Each of the Company and the Subsidiary has full corporate power and authority to own its properties and conduct its business as currently being carried on and as described in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, and is duly qualified or registered to do business as a foreign corporation in good standing (to the extent such status is possible in the relevant foreign jurisdiction) in each jurisdiction in which it owns or leases real property or in which the conduct of its business makes such qualification or registration necessary and in which the failure to so qualify or register would have a material adverse effect upon the business, prospects, management, properties, operations, condition (financial or otherwise) or results of operations of the Company and the Subsidiary, taken as a whole ("**Material Adverse Effect**").

(vi) Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has incurred any material liabilities or obligations, other than those incurred in the ordinary course of business, direct or contingent, or entered into any material transactions, or declared or paid any dividends or made any distribution of any kind with respect to its capital stock; and there has not been any change in the capital stock (other than a change in the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants), or any material change in the short-term or long-term debt, or any issuance of options, warrants, convertible securities or other rights to purchase the capital stock, other than pursuant to the Company's Amended and Restated 2002 Stock Plan, 2011 Equity Incentive Plan, 2013 Non-Employee Director's Equity Incentive Plan or New-Hire Equity Incentive Plan, of the Company or the Subsidiary, or any material adverse change in the business, prospects, management, properties, operations, condition (financial or otherwise) or results of operations of the Company and the Subsidiary, taken as a whole ("**Material Adverse Change**") or any development which would reasonably be expected to result in any Material Adverse Change.

(vii) Except as set forth in the Prospectus, there is not pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened, any action, suit or proceeding (a) to which the Company or the Subsidiary is or would be a party or (b) which has as the subject thereof any officer or director of the Company or the Subsidiary, any employee benefit plan sponsored by the Company or the Subsidiary or any property or assets owned or leased by the Company or the Subsidiary before or by any court or Governmental Authority (as defined below), or any arbitrator, which, individually or in the aggregate, would reasonably be expected to result in any Material Adverse Change, or would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the ability of the Company or the

7

Subsidiary to perform its obligations under this Agreement or which are otherwise material in the context of the sale of the Common Stock. There are no current or pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, contemplated or threatened, legal, governmental or regulatory actions, suits or proceedings (x) to which the Company or the Subsidiary is subject or (y) which has as the subject thereof any officer or director of the Company or the Subsidiary, any employee plan sponsored by the Company or the Subsidiary or any property or assets owned or leased by the Company or the Subsidiary, that are required to be described in the Registration Statement, and Prospectus by the Securities Act and that have not been so described.

(viii) There are no statutes, regulations, contracts or documents that are required to be described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus or required to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement by the Securities Act that have not been so described or filed.

(ix) This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, and assuming due authorization, execution and delivery by Cowen constitutes a valid, legal and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as rights to indemnity hereunder may be limited by federal or state securities laws and except as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally and subject to general principles of equity. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions herein contemplated did not or will not (A) conflict with or result in a breach or violation of any of the terms or provisions of, or constitute a default under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company or the Subsidiary pursuant to any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or the Subsidiary is a party or by which the Company or the Subsidiary is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company or the Subsidiary is subject, (B) result in any violation of the provisions of the Company's or the Subsidiary's charter, constitution or by-laws (as applicable) or (C) result in the violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule, regulation or decree of any court or arbitrator or federal, state, local or foreign governmental agency or regulatory authority having jurisdiction over the Company or the Subsidiary or any of their properties or assets (each, a "**Governmental Authority**"), except in the case of clause (A) or (C) as would not, individually or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect. No consent, approval, authorization or order of, or registration or filing with any Governmental Authority is required for the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement or for the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby, including the issuance or sale of the Common Stock by the Company, except such as may be required under the Securities Act or state or foreign securities or blue sky laws or the rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ("**FINRA**"); and the Company has full power and authority to enter into this Agreement and to consummate the

8

transactions contemplated hereby, including the authorization, issuance and sale of the Securities as contemplated by this Agreement.

(x) All of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company, including the outstanding shares of Common Stock, are duly authorized and validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, have been issued in compliance with all federal, state and applicable foreign securities laws, were not issued in violation of or subject to any preemptive rights or other rights to subscribe for or purchase securities that have not been waived; the Common Stock which may be sold hereunder by the Company has been duly authorized and, when issued, delivered and paid for in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, will have been validly issued and will be fully paid and nonassessable, and the holders thereof will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; and the capital stock of the Company, including the Common Stock, conforms to the description thereof in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus. There are no preemptive rights, restrictions upon the voting or transfer of any shares of Common Stock or other rights to subscribe for or to purchase, or any restriction upon the voting or transfer of, any shares of Common Stock pursuant to the Company's charter, by-laws or any agreement or other instrument to which the Company or the Subsidiary is a party or by which the Company or the Subsidiary is bound. Neither the filing of the Registration Statement nor the offering or sale of the Common Stock as contemplated by this Agreement gives rise to any rights for or relating to the registration of any shares of Common Stock or other securities of the Company (collectively "**Registration Rights**"), and any person to whom the Company has granted Registration Rights has agreed not to exercise such rights in connection with this Agreement. All of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Subsidiary have been duly and validly authorized and issued and are fully paid and nonassessable, have been issued in compliance with all federal, state and applicable foreign securities laws, were not issued in violation of or subject to any preemptive rights or other rights to subscribe for or purchase securities that have not been waived in writing (a copy of which has been delivered to counsel to Cowen) and, except as otherwise described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus, the Company owns of record and beneficially, free and clear of any security

interests, claims, liens, proxies, equities or other encumbrances, all of the issued and outstanding shares of such stock. Except as described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus, there are no options, warrants, agreements, contracts or other rights in existence to purchase or acquire from the Company or the Subsidiary any shares of the capital stock of the Company or the Subsidiary. The Company has an authorized and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus under the caption "Capitalization." The Common Stock conforms in all material respects to the description thereof contained and the Prospectus. The description of the Company's stock option, stock bonus and other stock plans or arrangements, and the options or other rights granted thereunder, set forth in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus accurately and fairly presents the information required to be shown with respect to such plans, arrangements, options and rights.

(xi) (A) Each of the Company and the Subsidiary holds, and is operating in compliance in all material respects with, all material franchises, grants, authorizations, licenses, permits, easements, consents, certificates and orders of any Governmental Authority or self-regulatory body required for the conduct of its business as currently conducted; (B) all such franchises, grants, authorizations, licenses, permits, easements, consents, certifications and orders that are material to the Company or the Subsidiary are valid and in full force and effect; (C) neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has received notice of any revocation or modification of any such franchise, grant, authorization, license, permit, easement, consent, certification or order that is material to the Company or the Subsidiary or has reason to believe that any such franchise, grant, authorization, license, permit, easement, consent, certification or order that are material to the Company or its Subsidiary will not be renewed in the ordinary course; and (D) except as would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, each of the Company and the Subsidiary is and at all times has been in compliance with all applicable federal, state, local and foreign laws, regulations, orders and decrees.

(xii) Except as described in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, the Company and the Subsidiary: (A) are and at all times have been in compliance in all material respects with all statutes, rules or regulations applicable to the Company and the Subsidiary regarding the ownership, testing, development, manufacture, packaging, processing, use, distribution, marketing, labeling, promotion, sale, offer for sale, storage, import, export or disposal of any product manufactured or distributed by the Company or the Subsidiary or to billing, kickbacks, referral relationships or arrangements, ethics, claims processing, claims submission and privacy and security of health information ("**Applicable Laws**"); (B) have not received any notice of a material adverse finding, warning letter, untitled letter or other correspondence or notice from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the "**FDA**") or any other Governmental Authority alleging or asserting noncompliance with any Applicable Laws or any licenses, certificates, approvals, clearances, authorizations, permits and supplements or amendments thereto required by any such Applicable Laws ("**Authorizations**"); (C) have not received notice that any Governmental Authority has taken, is taking or intends to take action to limit, suspend, modify or revoke any Authorizations and the Company has no knowledge that any such Governmental Authority is considering such action; and (D) have filed, obtained, maintained or submitted all material reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments as required by any Applicable Laws or Authorizations and that all such reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments were complete and correct in all material respects on the date filed (or were corrected or supplemented by a subsequent submission).

(xiii) The clinical trials conducted by or on behalf of or sponsored by the Company or the Subsidiary or in which the Company or the Subsidiary or their product candidates have participated have been and, if still

pending, are being conducted (A) in material compliance with all statutes, rules, regulations and guidance applicable thereto and (B) in all material respects in accordance with medical and scientific research procedures that the Company reasonably believes are appropriate. Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has received any notices or other correspondence from the FDA or any other Governmental Authority requiring the termination, suspension or material modification of any clinical trials.

(xiv) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has (A) offered, authorized, promised, made or agreed to make gifts of money, other property, or anything of value to any actual or potential customer, supplier, governmental employee, Medicare or Medicaid beneficiary, or any person in a position to assist or hinder the Company or the Subsidiary in connection with any actual or proposed transaction or (B) maintained any unrecorded fund or asset of the Company or the Subsidiary for any improper purpose or made any false entries on its books and records for any reason.

(xv) The Company and the Subsidiary have good and marketable title to all property (whether real or personal, except with respect to Intellectual Property, as to which matters of title are addressed in paragraph (xvi) of this Section 6(a)) described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus as being owned by them, in each case free and clear of all liens, claims, security interests, other encumbrances or defects except such as (A) are described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus or (B) do not, singly or in the aggregate, materially affect the value of such property and do not interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company or the Subsidiary. The property held under lease by the Company and the Subsidiary is held by them under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases with only such exceptions with respect to any particular lease as do not interfere in any material respect with the conduct of the business of the Company or the Subsidiary.

(xvi) Each of the Company and the Subsidiary owns, possesses, has a valid license to or can acquire or license on reasonable terms, all Intellectual Property necessary for the conduct of the Company's and the Subsidiary's business as now conducted or as described in the Registration Statement, the and the Prospectus to be conducted, except as such failure to own, possess, or acquire such rights would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Furthermore, (A) except as described in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, there are no rights of third parties to any Intellectual Property owned by the Company or the Subsidiary, or any Intellectual Property described in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus as being owned by them, other than licenses granted to customers and suppliers of the Company or the Subsidiary in the ordinary course of business of the Company or the Subsidiary, and except as so described, there are no restrictions on the ability of the Company or the Subsidiary to control or transfer any rights to the Intellectual Property so owned or described; (B) to the knowledge of the Company, there is no

infringement, misappropriation or violation by third parties of any such Intellectual Property, except as such infringement, misappropriation or violation would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect; (C) except as described in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened, action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the Company's or the Subsidiary's rights in or to any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such claim; (D) the Intellectual Property owned by the Company and the Subsidiary, and to the knowledge of the Company, the Intellectual Property licensed to the Company and the Subsidiary, has not been adjudged invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, and, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the validity or scope of any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which are reasonably likely to form a basis for any such claim; (E) except as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, there is no pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others that the Company or the Subsidiary infringes, misappropriates or otherwise violates any Intellectual Property or other proprietary rights of others, neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has received any written notice of such claim and the Company and the Subsidiary are unaware of any other fact which would be reasonably likely to form a basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim; (F) to the Company's knowledge, no employee of the Company or the Subsidiary is in violation of any term of any employment contract, patent disclosure agreement, invention assignment agreement, non-competition agreement, non-solicitation agreement, nondisclosure agreement or any restrictive covenant to or with a former employer where the basis of such violation relates to such employee's employment with the Company or the Subsidiary or actions undertaken by the employee while employed with the Company or the Subsidiary, except for such violations as would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect; and (G) each former and current employee or consultant of the Company or the Subsidiary is a party to a written contract with the Company or the Subsidiary that assigns to the Company or the Subsidiary all rights to all inventions, improvements, discoveries and information relating to the Company or the Subsidiary. "**Intellectual Property**" means all patents, patent applications, together with any reissues, continuations, continuations-in-part, revisions, extensions or re-examinations thereof, trade and service marks, trade and service mark registrations, trade names, copyrights, licenses, inventions, trade secrets, domain names, technology, know-how and other intellectual property.

(xvii) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary (A) is in violation of its respective charter, by-laws, constitution or other organizational documents (as applicable), or (B) is in breach of or otherwise in default, and no event has occurred which, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default in the performance of any material obligation, agreement or condition contained in any bond, debenture, note, indenture, loan agreement or any other

material contract, lease or other instrument to which it is subject or by which any of them may be bound, or to which any of the material property or assets of the Company or the Subsidiary is subject.

(xviii) The Company and the Subsidiary have timely filed all relevant federal, state, local and foreign income and franchise tax returns required to be filed and are not in default in the payment of any taxes which were payable pursuant to said returns or any assessments with respect thereto, other than any which the Company or the Subsidiary is contesting in good faith or except as would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. There is no pending dispute with any taxing authority relating to any of such returns, and the Company has no knowledge of any proposed liability for any tax to be imposed upon the properties or assets of the Company or the Subsidiary for which there is not an adequate reserve reflected in the Company's financial statements included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus.

(xix) The Company has not distributed and will not distribute any prospectus or other offering material in connection with the offering and sale of the Common Stock other than the Prospectus or other materials permitted by the Securities Act to be distributed by the Company; provided, however, that, the Company has not made and will not make any offer relating to the Common Stock that would constitute a "free writing prospectus" as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

(xx) The Common Stock is registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act and is included or approved for listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market and the Company has taken no action designed to, or likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act or delisting the Common Stock from the Nasdaq Capital Market nor has the Company received any notification that the Commission or the Nasdaq Capital Market is contemplating terminating such registration or listing. The Company has complied in all material respects with the applicable requirements of the Nasdaq Capital Market for maintenance of inclusion of the Common Stock thereon. The Company has submitted a notice of listing of additional shares relating to the Common Stock being offered pursuant to this Agreement to the Nasdaq Capital Market. Except as previously disclosed to counsel for Cowen or as set forth in the Prospectus, to the knowledge of the Company, no beneficial owners of the Company's capital stock or subordinated debt who, together with their associated persons and affiliates, hold in the aggregate 10% or more of such capital stock or subordinated debt, have any direct or indirect association or affiliate with a FINRA member.

(xxi) Other than the Subsidiary, the Company, directly or indirectly, owns, and upon closing of the offering of the Common Stock, directly or indirectly, will own, no capital stock or other equity or ownership or proprietary interest in any corporation, partnership, association, trust or other entity.

(xxii) The Company maintains a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States and to maintain accountability for assets; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, the Company's internal control over financial reporting is effective and none of the Company, its board of directors and audit committee is aware of any "significant deficiencies" or "material weaknesses" (each as defined by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board) in its internal control over financial reporting, or any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees of the Company who have a significant role in the Company's internal controls; and since the end of the latest audited fiscal year, there has been no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (whether or not remediated) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting. The Company's board of directors has, subject to the exceptions, cure periods and the phase in periods specified in the applicable stock exchange rules ("**Exchange Rules**"), validly appointed an audit committee to oversee internal accounting controls whose composition satisfies the applicable requirements of the Exchange Rules and the federal securities laws and the Company's board of directors and/or the audit committee has adopted a charter that satisfies the requirements of the Exchange Rules and the federal securities laws.

(xxiii) The Company carries, or is covered by, insurance from insurers with appropriately rated claims paying abilities in such amounts and covering such risks as is adequate for the conduct of its business and the value of its properties and as is customary for companies engaged in similar businesses in similar industries; all policies of insurance and any fidelity or surety bonds insuring the Company or the Subsidiary or its business, assets, employees, officers and directors are in full force and effect; the Company and the Subsidiary are in compliance with the terms of such policies and instruments in all material respects; there are no claims by the Company or the Subsidiary under any such policy or instrument as to which any insurance company is denying liability or defending under a reservation of rights clause, except as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; during the past 12 months, neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has been refused any insurance coverage sought or applied for; and neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has reason to believe that it will not be able to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

14

(xxiv) The Company is not and, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Common Stock hereunder, will not be an "investment company," as such term is defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

(xxv) The conditions for use of Form S-3, set forth in the General Instructions thereto, have been satisfied.

(xxvi) The documents incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus, when they became effective or were filed with the Commission, as the case may be, conformed in all material respects to the requirements of the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, as applicable, and were filed on a timely basis with the Commission and none of such documents contained an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; any further documents so filed and incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, or in the Prospectus, when such documents are filed with the Commission, will conform in all material respects to the requirements of the Exchange Act, and will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(xxvii) The Company is in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

(xxviii) The Company has established and maintains disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 under the Exchange Act) and such controls and procedures are effective in ensuring that material information relating to the Company, including the Subsidiary, is made known to the principal executive officer and the principal financial officer of the Company. The Company has utilized such controls and procedures in preparing and evaluating the disclosures in the Registration Statement, and in the Prospectus.

(xxix) Each of the Company, the Subsidiary, its affiliates and any of their respective officers, directors, supervisors, managers, agents, or employees, has not violated, its participation in the offering will not violate, and the Company has instituted and maintains policies and procedures designed to ensure continued compliance with, each of the following laws: (a) anti-bribery laws, including but not limited to, any applicable law, rule, or regulation of any locality, including but not limited to any law, rule, or regulation promulgated to implement the OECD Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions, signed December 17, 1997, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or any other law, rule or regulation of similar purposes and scope, (b) anti-money laundering laws, including but not limited to, applicable federal, state, international, foreign or other laws, regulations or government guidance regarding

15

anti-money laundering, including, without limitation, Title 18 US. Code section 1956 and 1957, the Patriot Act, the Bank Secrecy Act, and international anti-money laundering principles or procedures by an intergovernmental group or organization, such as the Financial Action Task Force on Money Laundering, of which the United States is a member and with which designation the United States representative to the group or organization continues to concur, all as amended, and any Executive order, directive, or regulation pursuant to the authority of any of the foregoing, or any orders or licenses issued thereunder or (c) laws and regulations imposing U.S. economic sanctions measures, including, but not limited to, the International Emergency Economic Powers Act, the Trading with the Enemy Act, the United Nations Participation Act, the Syria Accountability and Lebanese Sovereignty Act and the Iran Threat Reduction and Syria Human Rights Act, all as amended, and any Executive Order, directive, or regulation pursuant to the authority of any of the foregoing, including the regulations of

the United States Treasury Department set forth under 31 CFR, Subtitle B, Chapter V, as amended, or any orders or licenses issued thereunder; and neither the Company nor the Subsidiary nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer, agent, employee or other person associated with or acting on behalf of the Company or the Subsidiary has (y) used any corporate funds for any unlawful contribution, gift, entertainment or other unlawful expense relating to political activity; or (z) made any direct or indirect unlawful payment to any foreign or domestic government official or employee from corporate funds.

(xxx) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer or employee of the Company or the Subsidiary is currently subject to any U.S. sanctions administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of the Treasury.

(xxxii) To the Company's knowledge, no transaction has occurred between or among the Company and the Subsidiary, on the one hand, and any of the Company's officers, directors or 5% stockholders or any affiliate or affiliates of any such officer, director or 5% stockholders that is required to be described that is not so described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus. The Company has not, directly or indirectly, extended or maintained credit, or arranged for the extension of credit, or renewed an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any of its directors or executive officers in violation of applicable laws, including Section 402 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

(xxxiii) Except as disclosed in Prospectus, neither the Company nor the Subsidiary is in violation of any statute, any rule, regulation, decision or order of any Governmental Authority or any court, domestic or foreign, relating to the use, disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or relating to the protection or restoration of the environment or human exposure to hazardous or toxic substances (collectively, "**Environmental Laws**"), owns or operates any real property contaminated with any substance that is subject to any Environmental Laws, is liable for any off-site disposal or contamination pursuant to any Environmental Laws, or is subject to any claim relating to any

16

Environmental Laws, which violation, contamination, liability or claim would individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect; and the Company is not aware of any pending investigation which might lead to such a claim.

(xxxiiii) Each of the Company and the Subsidiary (A) is in compliance, in all material respects, with any and all applicable foreign, federal, state and local laws, rules, regulations, treaties, statutes and codes promulgated by any and all governmental authorities (including pursuant to the Occupational Health and Safety Act) relating to the protection of human health and safety in the workplace ("**Occupational Laws**"); (B) has received all material permits, licenses or other approvals required of it under applicable Occupational Laws to conduct its business as currently conducted; and (C) is in compliance, in all material respects, with all terms and conditions of such permit, license or approval. No action, proceeding, revocation proceeding, writ, injunction or claim is pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened against the Company or the Subsidiary relating to Occupational Laws, and the Company does not have knowledge of any facts, circumstances or developments relating to its operations or cost accounting practices that could reasonably be expected to form the basis for or give rise to such actions, suits, investigations or proceedings.

(xxxv) (i) To the knowledge of the Company, no "prohibited transaction" as defined under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code and not exempt under ERISA Section 408 and the regulations and published interpretations thereunder has occurred with respect to any Employee Benefit Plan. At no time has the Company or any ERISA Affiliate maintained, sponsored, participated in, contributed to or has or had any liability or obligation in respect of any Employee Benefit Plan subject to Part 3 of Subtitle B of Title I of ERISA, Title IV of ERISA, or Section 412 of the Code or any "multiemployer plan" as defined in Section 3(37) of ERISA or any multiple employer plan for which the Company or any ERISA Affiliate has incurred or could incur liability under Section 4063 or 4064 of ERISA. No Employee Benefit Plan provides or promises, or at any time provided or promised, retiree health, life insurance, or other retiree welfare benefits except as may be required by the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended, or similar state law. Each Employee Benefit Plan is and has been operated in material compliance with its terms and all applicable laws, including but not limited to ERISA and the Code and, to the knowledge of the Company, no event has occurred (including a "reportable event" as such term is defined in Section 4043 of ERISA) and no condition exists that would subject the Company or any ERISA Affiliate to any material tax, fine, lien, penalty or liability imposed by ERISA, the Code or other applicable law. Each Employee Benefit Plan intended to be qualified under Code Section 401(a) is so qualified and has a favorable determination or opinion letter from the IRS upon which it can rely, and any such determination or opinion letter remains in effect and has not been revoked; to the knowledge of the Company, nothing has occurred since the date of any such determination or opinion letter that is reasonably likely to adversely affect such qualification; (ii) with respect to each

17

Foreign Benefit Plan, such Foreign Benefit Plan (A) if intended to qualify for special tax treatment, meets, in all material respects, the requirements for such treatment, and (B) if required to be funded, is funded to the extent required by applicable law, and with respect to all other Foreign Benefit Plans, adequate reserves therefore have been established on the accounting statements of the Company or the Subsidiary, as applicable; (iii) neither the Company nor the Subsidiary has any obligations under any collective bargaining agreement with any union and no organization efforts are underway with respect to employees of the Company or the Subsidiary. As used in this Agreement, "**Code**" means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended; "**Employee Benefit Plan**" means any "employee benefit plan" within the meaning of Section 3(3) of ERISA, including, without limitation, all stock purchase, stock option, stock-based severance, employment, change-in-control, medical, disability, fringe benefit, bonus, incentive, deferred compensation, employee loan and all other employee benefit plans, agreements, programs, policies or other arrangements, whether or not subject to ERISA, under which (A) any current or former employee, director or independent contractor of the Company or the Subsidiary has any present or future right to benefits and which are contributed to, sponsored by or maintained by the Company or the Subsidiary or (B) the Company or the Subsidiary has had or has any present or future obligation or liability; "**ERISA**" means the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended; "**ERISA Affiliate**" means any member of the company's controlled group as defined in Code Section 414(b), (c), (m) or (o); and "**Foreign**

Benefit Plan” means any Employee Benefit Plan established, maintained or contributed to outside of the United States of America or which covers any employee working or residing outside of the United States.

(xxxv) Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus, the Company has not granted rights to develop, manufacture, produce, assemble, distribute, license, market or sell its products to any other person and is not bound by any agreement that affects the exclusive right of the Company to develop, manufacture, produce, assemble, distribute, license, market or sell its products.

(xxxvi) No labor problem or dispute with the employees of the Company or the Subsidiary exists or is threatened or imminent, and the Company is not aware of any existing or imminent labor disturbance by the employees of any of its or the Subsidiary’s principal suppliers, contractors or customers, that could have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxvii) Subject to compliance with any applicable requirements under the Corporations Act and the Subsidiary’s constitution, the Subsidiary is not currently prohibited, directly or indirectly, from paying any dividends to the Company, from making any other distribution on such Subsidiary’s capital stock, from repaying to the Company any loans or advances to such Subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any of such Subsidiary’s property or assets to the

18

Company, except as described in or contemplated by the Registration Statement (excluding the exhibits thereto), and the Prospectus.

(xxxviii) Any third-party statistical and market-related data included in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus is based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate in all material respects.

(xxxix) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary is, and after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Common Stock neither the Company nor the Subsidiary will be, a “holding company” or a “subsidiary company” of a “holding company” or an “affiliate” of a “holding company” or of a “subsidiary company,” as such terms are defined in the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, as amended.

(xl) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary is engaged in any unfair labor practice; except for matters which would not, individually or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Change, (i) there is (A) no unfair labor practice complaint pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened against the Company or the Subsidiary before the National Labor Relations Board, and no grievance or arbitration proceeding arising out of or under collective bargaining agreements is pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened, (B) no strike, labor dispute, slowdown or stoppage pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened against the Company or the Subsidiary and (C) no union representation dispute currently existing concerning the employees of the Company or the Subsidiary, (ii) to the Company’s knowledge, no union organizing activities are currently taking place concerning the employees of the Company or the Subsidiary and (iii) there has been no violation of any federal, state, local or foreign law relating to discrimination in the hiring, promotion or pay of employees, any applicable wage or hour laws, any provision of the Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act of 1988, as amended (“**WARN Act**”) or the WARN Act’s state, foreign or local equivalent, or any provision of ERISA or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder concerning the employees of the Company or the Subsidiary.

(xli) Each “forward-looking statement” (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act or Section 21E of the Exchange Act) contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, and the Prospectus has been made or reaffirmed with a reasonable basis and in good faith.

(xlii) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiary nor any of their respective directors, officers or, to the knowledge of the Company, any of their affiliates or controlling persons has taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed, or which has constituted or might reasonably be expected to cause or result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Common Stock.

19

(xliii) From the time of filing of the Registration Statement with the Commission (or, if earlier, the first date on which the Company engaged directly or through any person authorized to act on its behalf in any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the Securities Act (any “**Testing-the-Waters Communication**”)) through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act (an “**Emerging Growth Company**”).

(xliv) The Company has not alone engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communication and has not authorized anyone to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications.

(b) Any certificate signed by any officer of the Company and delivered to you or to counsel for Cowen shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to each Cowen as to the matters covered thereby.

(c) The Company acknowledges that Cowen and, for purposes of the opinions to be delivered pursuant to Section 7 hereof, counsel to the Company and counsel to Cowen, will rely upon the accuracy and truthfulness of the foregoing representations and hereby consents to such reliance.

7. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees with Cowen that:

(a) Registration Statement Amendments. After the date of this Agreement and during any period in which a Prospectus relating to any Placement Shares is required to be delivered by Cowen under the Securities Act (including in circumstances where such requirement

may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act), the Company will notify Cowen promptly of the time when any subsequent amendment to the Registration Statement, other than documents incorporated by reference, has been filed with the Commission and/or has become effective or any subsequent supplement to the Prospectus has been filed and of any request by the Commission for any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus (insofar as it relates to the transactions contemplated hereby) or for additional information.

(b) Placement Shares Prospectus. During the term of this Agreement the Company will not file any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, relating to the Placement Shares or a security convertible into the Placement Shares unless a copy thereof has been submitted to Cowen within two days before the filing and Cowen has not reasonably objected thereto within the two-day period (*provided, however*, that the failure of Cowen to make such objection shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect Cowen's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement and the Company will furnish to Cowen at the time of filing thereof a copy of any document that upon filing is deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement or Prospectus, except for those documents available via IDEA.

20

(c) Prospectus Filing. The Company will cause each amendment or supplement to the Prospectus, other than documents incorporated by reference, to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act (the determination to file or not file any amendment or supplement with the Commission under this Section 7(a)), based on the Company's reasonable opinion or reasonable objections, shall be made exclusively by the Company).

(d) Notice of Commission Stop Orders. The Company will advise Cowen, promptly after it receives notice or obtains knowledge thereof, of the issuance or threatened issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, of the suspension of the qualification of the Placement Shares for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose; and it will promptly use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such a stop order should be issued.

(e) Delivery of Prospectus; Subsequent Changes. During any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered by Cowen under the Securities Act with respect to a pending sale of the Placement Shares, (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act), the Company will comply in all material respects with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act, as from time to time in force, and to file on or before their respective due dates (taking into account any extensions available under the Exchange Act) all reports and any definitive proxy or information statements required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, 15(d) or any other provision of or under the Exchange Act. If during such period any event occurs as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then existing, not misleading, or if during such period it is necessary to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, the Company will promptly notify Cowen to suspend the offering of Placement Shares during such period and the Company will promptly amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance; *provided, however*, that the Company may delay any such amendment or supplement if, in the judgment of the Company, it is in the best interests of the Company to do so.

(f) Listing of Placement Shares. During any period in which the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered by Cowen under the Securities Act with respect to a pending sale of the Placement Shares (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act), the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to cause the Placement Shares to be listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market and to qualify the Placement Shares for sale under the securities laws of such jurisdictions as Cowen reasonably designates and to continue such qualifications in effect so long as required for the distribution of the Placement Shares; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be

21

required in connection therewith to qualify as a foreign corporation or dealer in securities or file a general consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

(g) Delivery of Registration Statement and Prospectus. The Company will furnish to Cowen and its counsel (at the expense of the Company) copies of the Registration Statement, the Prospectus (including all documents incorporated by reference therein) and all amendments and supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that are filed with the Commission during any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered under the Securities Act (including all documents filed with the Commission during such period that are deemed to be incorporated by reference therein), in each case as soon as reasonably practicable and in such quantities as Cowen may from time to time reasonably request and, at Cowen's request, will also furnish copies of the Prospectus to each exchange or market on which sales of the Placement Shares may be made; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to furnish any document (other than the Prospectus) to Cowen to the extent such document is available on IDEA.

(h) Earnings Statement. The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but in any event not later than 15 months after the end of the Company's current fiscal quarter, an earnings statement covering a 12-month period that satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) and Rule 158 of the Securities Act. For the avoidance of doubt, the Company's compliance with the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act shall be deemed to satisfy this Section 7(f).

(i) Expenses. The Company, whether or not the transactions contemplated hereunder are consummated or this Agreement is terminated, in accordance with the provisions of Section 11 hereunder, will pay the following expenses all incident to the performance of its obligations hereunder, including, but not limited to, expenses relating to (i) the preparation, printing and filing of the Registration Statement and each amendment and supplement thereto, of each Prospectus and of each amendment and supplement thereto, (ii) the preparation, issuance and delivery of the Placement Shares, (iii) the qualification of the Placement Shares under securities laws in accordance with the provisions of Section 7(d) of this Agreement, including filing fees (*provided, however*, that any fees or disbursements of counsel for Cowen in connection therewith shall be paid by

Cowen except as set forth in (vii) below), (iv) the printing and delivery to Cowen of copies of the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto, and of this Agreement, (v) the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the listing or qualification of the Placement Shares for trading on the Nasdaq Capital Market, (vi) filing fees and expenses, if any, of the Commission and the FINRA Corporate Financing Department and (vii) the reasonable fees and disbursements of Cowen's counsel in an aggregate amount not to exceed \$50,000.

(j) Use of Proceeds. The Company will use the Net Proceeds as described in the Prospectus in the section entitled "Use of Proceeds."

(k) Notice of Other Sales. During the pendency of any Placement Notice given hereunder, and for 3 trading days following the termination of any Placement Notice given hereunder, the Company shall provide Cowen notice as promptly

22

as reasonably possible before it offers to sell, contracts to sell, sells, grants any option to sell or otherwise disposes of any shares of Common Stock (other than Placement Shares offered pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire Common Stock; *provided*, that such notice shall not be required in connection with the (i) issuance, grant or sale of Common Stock, options to purchase shares of Common Stock or Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of options or other equity awards pursuant to any stock incentive plan or other stock plan or arrangement described in the Prospectus or pursuant to any qualifying employment inducement award under the Exchange rules, (ii) the issuance of securities in connection with an acquisition, merger or sale or purchase of assets or other business combinations or strategic alliances, (iii) the issuance or sale of Common Stock pursuant to any dividend reinvestment plan that the Company may adopt from time to time provided the implementation of such is disclosed to Cowen in advance, (iv) any shares of common stock issuable upon the exchange, conversion or redemption of securities or the exercise of warrants, options or other rights in effect or outstanding or (v) filing of any registration statement under the Securities Act, or any pre-effective or post-effective amendment or prospectus supplement thereto, other than the Registration Statement, relating to the Placement Shares or that is intended to commence a public offering of equity, equity-linked or other derivative securities of the Company.

(l) Change of Circumstances. The Company will, at any time during the pendency of a Placement Notice, advise Cowen promptly after it shall have received notice or obtained knowledge thereof, of any information or fact that would alter or affect in any material respect any opinion, certificate, letter or other document provided to Cowen pursuant to this Agreement.

(m) Due Diligence Cooperation. The Company will cooperate with any reasonable due diligence review conducted by Cowen or its agents in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby, including, without limitation, providing information and making available documents and senior corporate officers, during regular business hours and at the Company's principal offices, as Cowen may reasonably request.

(n) Required Filings Relating to Placement of Placement Shares. To the extent that the filing of a prospectus supplement with the Commission with respect to a placement of Placement Shares becomes required under Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act, the Company agrees that on or before such dates as the Securities Act shall require, the Company will (i) file a prospectus supplement with the Commission under the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act (each and every filing under Rule 424(b), a "Filing Date"), which prospectus supplement will set forth, within the relevant period, the amount of Placement Shares sold through Cowen, the Net Proceeds to the Company and the compensation payable by the Company to Cowen with respect to such Placement Shares (provided that the Company may satisfy its obligations under this Section 7(l)(i) by effecting a filing in accordance with the Exchange Act with respect to such information), and (ii) deliver such number of copies of each such prospectus supplement to each exchange or market on which such sales were effected as may be required by the rules or regulations of such exchange or market.

23

(o) Representation Dates; Certificate. On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and each time the Company (i) files the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares or amends or supplements the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares (other than a prospectus supplement filed in accordance with Section 7(l) of this Agreement) by means of a post-effective amendment, sticker, or supplement but not by means of incorporation of document(s) by reference to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares; (ii) files an annual report on Form 10-K under the Exchange Act; (iii) files its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q under the Exchange Act; or (iv) files a current report on Form 8-K containing amended financial information (other than information "furnished" pursuant to Items 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K) under the Exchange Act (each date of filing of one or more of the documents referred to in clauses (i) through (iv) shall be a "Representation Date"); the Company shall furnish Cowen with a certificate, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit 7(m) within three (3) Trading Days of any Representation Date if requested by Cowen. The requirement to provide a certificate under this Section 7(m) shall be waived for any Representation Date occurring at a time at which no Placement Notice is pending, which waiver shall continue until the earlier to occur of the date the Company delivers a Placement Notice hereunder (which for such calendar quarter shall be considered a Representation Date) and the next occurring Representation Date; *provided, however*, that such waiver shall not apply for any Representation Date on which the Company files its annual report on Form 10-K. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company subsequently decides to sell Placement Shares following a Representation Date when the Company relied on such waiver and did not provide Cowen with a certificate under this Section 7(m), then before the Company delivers the Placement Notice or Cowen sells any Placement Shares, the Company shall provide Cowen with a certificate, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit 7(m), dated the date of the Placement Notice.

(p) Legal Opinion. On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and within three (3) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate in the form attached hereto as Exhibit 7(m) for which no waiver is applicable, the Company shall cause to be furnished to Cowen a written opinion of Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP ("Company Counsel"), or other counsel satisfactory to Cowen, in form and substance satisfactory to Cowen and its counsel, dated the date that the opinion is required to be delivered, substantially similar to the forms of opinion provided to Cowen, modified, as necessary, to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented; *provided, however*, that in lieu of such opinions for subsequent Representation Dates, Company Counsel may furnish Cowen with a letter (a "Reliance Letter") to the effect that Cowen may rely on a prior opinion delivered under this Section 7(n) to the same extent as if it were dated the date of such letter (except that statements in such prior opinion shall be deemed to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as amended or supplemented at such Representation Date).

(q) Comfort Letter. On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and within three (3) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate in the form attached hereto as Exhibit 7(m) for which no waiver is applicable, the Company shall cause its independent

24

accountants to furnish Cowen letters (the "Comfort Letters"), dated the date of the Comfort Letter is delivered, in form and substance satisfactory to Cowen, (i) confirming that they are an independent registered public accounting firm within the meaning of the Securities Act and the PCAOB, (ii) stating, as of such date, the conclusions and findings of such firm with respect to the financial information and other matters ordinarily covered by accountants' "comfort letters" to Cowen in connection with registered public offerings (the first such letter, the "Initial Comfort Letter") and (iii) updating the Initial Comfort Letter with any information that would have been included in the Initial Comfort Letter had it been given on such date and modified as necessary to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as amended and supplemented to the date of such letter.

(r) Market Activities. The Company will not, directly or indirectly, (i) take any action designed to cause or result in, or that constitutes or might reasonably be expected to constitute, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Placement Shares or (ii) sell, bid for, or purchase the Placement Shares, or pay anyone any compensation for soliciting purchases of the Placement Shares other than Cowen; provided, however, that the Company may bid for and purchase shares of its common stock in accordance with Rule 10b-18 under the Exchange Act.

(s) Insurance. The Company and its Subsidiaries shall maintain, or caused to be maintained, insurance in such amounts and covering such risks as is reasonable and customary for the business for which it is engaged.

(t) Compliance with Laws. The Company and each of its subsidiaries shall maintain, or cause to be maintained, all material environmental permits, licenses and other authorizations required by federal, state and local law in order to conduct their businesses as described in the Prospectus, and the Company and each of its Subsidiaries shall conduct their businesses, or cause their businesses to be conducted, in substantial compliance with such permits, licenses and authorizations and with applicable environmental laws, except where the failure to maintain or be in compliance with such permits, licenses and authorizations could not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Change.

(u) Investment Company Act. The Company will conduct its affairs in such a manner so as to reasonably ensure that neither it nor its subsidiaries is or, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Placement Shares and the application of proceeds therefrom as described in the Prospectus, will be an "investment company" within the meaning of such term under the Investment Company Act.

(v) Securities Act and Exchange Act. The Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to comply in all material respects with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act and the Exchange Act as from time to time in force, so far as necessary to permit the continuance of sales of, or dealings in, the Placement Shares as contemplated by the provisions hereof and the Prospectus.

25

(w) No Offer to Sell. Other than a free writing prospectus (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) approved in advance by the Company and Cowen in its capacity as principal or agent hereunder, neither Cowen nor the Company (including its agents and representatives, other than Cowen in its capacity as such) will make, use, prepare, authorize, approve or refer to any written communication (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), required to be filed with the Commission, that constitutes an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy the Placement Shares hereunder

(x) Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The Company and the Subsidiaries will use their commercially reasonable efforts to comply with all effective applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

8. Conditions to Cowen's Obligations. The obligations of Cowen hereunder with respect to a Placement will be subject to the continuing accuracy and completeness in all material respects of the representations and warranties made by the Company herein, to the due performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder, to the completion by Cowen of a due diligence review satisfactory to Cowen in its reasonable judgment, and to the continuing satisfaction (or waiver by Cowen in its sole discretion) of the following additional conditions:

(a) Registration Statement Effective. The Registration Statement shall be effective and shall be available for the sale of all Placement Shares contemplated to be issued by any Placement Notice which have not yet been issued and sold pursuant to such Registration Statement.

(b) No Material Notices. None of the following events shall have occurred and be continuing: (i) receipt by the Company or any of its subsidiaries of any request for additional information from the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority during the period of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the response to which would require any post-effective amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus; (ii) the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the initiation of any proceedings for that purpose; (iii) receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Placement Shares for sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; (iv) the occurrence of any event that makes any material statement made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any material document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue in any material respect or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, related Prospectus or such documents so that, in the case of the Registration Statement, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and, that in the case of the Prospectus, it will not contain any materially untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

26

(c) No Misstatement or Material Omission. Cowen shall not have advised the Company that the Registration Statement or Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, contains an untrue statement of fact that in Cowen's reasonable opinion is material, or omits to state a fact that in Cowen's reasonable opinion is material and is required to be stated therein or is necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.

(d) Material Changes. Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, or disclosed in the Company's reports filed with the Commission, there shall not have been any material adverse change, on a consolidated basis, in the authorized capital stock of the Company or any Material Adverse Change or any development that could reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Change, or any downgrading in or withdrawal of the rating assigned to any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities) by any rating organization or a public announcement by any rating organization that it has under surveillance or review its rating of any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities), the effect of which, in the case of any such action by a rating organization described above, in the reasonable judgment of Cowen (without relieving the Company of any obligation or liability it may otherwise have), is so material as to make it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering of the Placement Shares on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the Prospectus.

(e) Company Counsel Legal Opinion. Cowen shall have received the opinions of Company Counsel or Reliance Letter required to be delivered pursuant Section 7(n) on or before the date on which such delivery of such opinion or Reliance Letter is required pursuant to Section 7(n).

(f) Cowen Counsel Legal Opinion. Cowen shall have received from LeClairRyan, A Professional Corporation, counsel for Cowen, such opinion or opinions, on or before the date on which the delivery of the Company Counsel legal opinion is required pursuant to Section 7(n), with respect to such matters as Cowen may reasonably require, and the Company shall have furnished to such counsel such documents as they request for enabling them to pass upon such matters.

(g) Comfort Letter. Cowen shall have received the Comfort Letter required to be delivered pursuant Section 7(o) on or before the date on which such delivery of such opinion is required pursuant to Section 7(o).

(h) Representation Certificate. Cowen shall have received the certificate required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(m) on or before the date on which delivery of such certificate is required pursuant to Section 7(m).

(i) No Suspension. Trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended on the Nasdaq Capital Market.

(j) Other Materials. On each date on which the Company is required to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(m), the Company shall have furnished to Cowen such appropriate further information, certificates and documents as Cowen may have reasonably requested. All such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents

27

shall have been in compliance with the provisions hereof. The Company will furnish Cowen with such conformed copies of such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents as Cowen shall have reasonably requested.

(k) Securities Act Filings Made. All filings with the Commission required by Rule 424 under the Securities Act to have been filed prior to the issuance of any Placement Notice hereunder shall have been made within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by Rule 424.

(l) Approval for Listing. The Placement Shares shall either have been (i) approved for listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market, subject only to notice of issuance, or (ii) the Company shall have filed an application for listing of the Placement Shares on the Nasdaq Capital Market at, or prior to, the issuance of any Placement Notice.

(m) No Termination Event. There shall not have occurred any event that would permit Cowen to terminate this Agreement pursuant to Section 11(a).

9. Indemnification and Contribution.

(a) Company Indemnification. The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless Cowen, the directors, officers, partners, employees and agents of Cowen and each person, if any, who (i) controls Cowen within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act, or (ii) is controlled by or is under common control with Cowen (a "Cowen Affiliate") from and against any and all losses, claims, liabilities, expenses and damages (including, but not limited to, any and all reasonable investigative, legal and other expenses incurred in connection with, and any and all amounts paid in settlement (in accordance with Section 9(c)) of, any action, suit or proceeding between any of the indemnified parties and any indemnifying parties or between any indemnified party and any third party, or otherwise, or any claim asserted), as and when incurred, to which Cowen, or any such person, may become subject under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or other federal or state statutory law or regulation, at common law or otherwise, insofar as such losses, claims, liabilities, expenses or damages arise out of or are based, directly or indirectly, on (x) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or in any free writing prospectus or (y) the omission or alleged omission to state in any such document a material fact required to be stated in it or necessary to make the statements in it (with respect to the Prospectus or any free writing prospectus, in light of the circumstances in which such statements were made), not misleading; *provided, however*, that this indemnity agreement shall not apply to the extent that such loss, claim, liability, expense or damage arises from the sale of the Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement and is caused directly or indirectly by an untrue statement or omission made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information relating to Cowen and furnished to the Company by Cowen expressly for inclusion in any document as described in clause (x) of this Section 9(a). This indemnity agreement will be in addition to any liability that the Company might otherwise have.

28

(b) Cowen Indemnification. Cowen agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and its directors and each officer of the Company that signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who (i) controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act or (ii) is controlled by or is under common control with the Company (a “Company Affiliate”) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the indemnity contained in Section 9(a), as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions, made in the Registration Statement (or any amendments thereto) or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) or any free writing prospectus in reliance upon and in conformity with written information relating to Cowen and furnished to the Company by Cowen expressly for inclusion in any document as described in clause (x) of Section 9(a).

(c) Procedure. Any party that proposes to assert the right to be indemnified under this Section 9 will, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim is to be made against an indemnifying party or parties under this Section 9, notify each such indemnifying party in writing of the commencement of such action, enclosing a copy of all papers served, but the omission so to notify such indemnifying party will not relieve the indemnifying party from (i) any liability that it might have to any indemnified party otherwise than under this Section 9 and (ii) any liability that it may have to any indemnified party under the foregoing provision of this Section 9 unless, and only to the extent that, such omission results in the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses by the indemnifying party. If any such action is brought against any indemnified party and it notifies the indemnifying party of its commencement, the indemnifying party will be entitled to participate in and, to the extent that it elects by delivering written notice to the indemnified party promptly after receiving notice of the commencement of the action from the indemnified party, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense of the action, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party, and after notice from the indemnifying party to the indemnified party of its election to assume the defense, the indemnifying party will not be liable to the indemnified party for any legal or other expenses except as provided below and except for the reasonable costs of investigation subsequently incurred by the indemnified party in connection with the defense. The indemnified party will have the right to employ its own counsel in any such action, but the fees, expenses and other charges of such counsel will be at the expense of such indemnified party unless (1) the employment of counsel by the indemnified party has been authorized in writing by the indemnifying party, (2) the indemnified party has reasonably concluded (based on advice of counsel) that there may be legal defenses available to it or other indemnified parties that are different from or in addition to those available to the indemnifying party, (3) a conflict or potential conflict exists (based on advice of counsel to the indemnified party) between the indemnified party and the indemnifying party (in which case the indemnifying party will not have the right to direct the defense of such action on behalf of the indemnified party) or (4) the indemnifying party has not in fact employed counsel to assume the defense of such action within a reasonable time after receiving notice of the commencement of the action, in each of which cases the reasonable fees, disbursements and other charges of counsel will be at the expense of the indemnifying party or parties. It is understood that the indemnifying

29

party or parties shall not, in connection with any proceeding or related proceedings in the same jurisdiction, be liable for the reasonable fees, disbursements and other charges of more than one separate firm admitted to practice in such jurisdiction at any one time for all such indemnified party or parties. All such fees, disbursements and other charges will be reimbursed by the indemnifying party promptly as they are incurred. An indemnifying party will not, in any event, be liable for any settlement of any action or claim effected without its written consent. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of each indemnified party, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened claim, action or proceeding relating to the matters contemplated by this Section 9 (whether or not any indemnified party is a party thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent includes an unconditional release of each indemnified party from all liability arising or that may arise out of such claim, action or proceeding.

(d) Contribution. In order to provide for just and equitable contribution in circumstances in which the indemnification provided for in the foregoing paragraphs of this Section 9 is applicable in accordance with its terms but for any reason is held to be unavailable from the Company or Cowen, the Company and Cowen will contribute to the total losses, claims, liabilities, expenses and damages (including any investigative, legal and other expenses reasonably incurred in connection with, and any amount paid in settlement of, any action, suit or proceeding or any claim asserted, but after deducting any contribution received by the Company from persons other than Cowen, such as persons who control the Company within the meaning of the Securities Act, officers of the Company who signed the Registration Statement and directors of the Company, who also may be liable for contribution) to which the Company and Cowen may be subject in such proportion as shall be appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and Cowen on the other. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and Cowen on the other hand shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total Net Proceeds from the sale of the Placement Shares (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total compensation received by Cowen from the sale of Placement Shares on behalf of the Company. If, but only if, the allocation provided by the foregoing sentence is not permitted by applicable law, the allocation of contribution shall be made in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in the foregoing sentence but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and Cowen, on the other, with respect to the statements or omission that resulted in such loss, claim, liability, expense or damage, or action in respect thereof, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations with respect to such offering. Such relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or Cowen, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission. The Company and Cowen agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to this Section 9(d) were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation that does not take into account the equitable considerations referred to herein. The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the loss, claim, liability, expense, or damage, or action in

30

respect thereof, referred to above in this Section 9(d) shall be deemed to include, for the purpose of this Section 9(d), any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating or defending any such action or claim to the extent consistent with Section 9(c) hereof. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 9(d), Cowen shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the commissions received by it under this Agreement and no person found guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) will be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. For

purposes of this Section 9(d), any person who controls a party to this Agreement within the meaning of the Securities Act, and any officers, directors, partners, employees or agents of Cowen, will have the same rights to contribution as that party, and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement will have the same rights to contribution as the Company, subject in each case to the provisions hereof. Any party entitled to contribution, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim for contribution may be made under this Section 9(d), will notify any such party or parties from whom contribution may be sought, but the omission to so notify will not relieve that party or parties from whom contribution may be sought from any other obligation it or they may have under this Section 9(d) except to the extent that the failure to so notify such other party materially prejudiced the substantive rights or defenses of the party from whom contribution is sought. Except for a settlement entered into pursuant to the last sentence of Section 9(c) hereof, no party will be liable for contribution with respect to any action or claim settled without its written consent if such consent is required pursuant to Section 9(c) hereof.

10. Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery. The indemnity and contribution agreements contained in Section 9 of this Agreement and all representations and warranties of the Company herein or in certificates delivered pursuant hereto shall survive, as of their respective dates, regardless of (i) any investigation made by or on behalf of Cowen, any controlling persons, or the Company (or any of their respective officers, directors or controlling persons), (ii) delivery and acceptance of the Placement Shares and payment therefor or (iii) any termination of this Agreement.

11. Termination.

(a) Cowen shall have the right by giving written notice as hereinafter specified at any time to terminate this Agreement if (i) any Material Adverse Change, or any development that would reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Change has occurred that, in the reasonable judgment of Cowen, would materially impair the ability of Cowen to sell the Placement Shares hereunder, (ii) the Company shall have failed, refused or been unable to perform any agreement on its part to be performed hereunder; *provided, however,* in the case of any failure of the Company to deliver (or cause another person to deliver) any certification, opinion, or letter required under Sections 7(m), 7(n), or 7(o), Cowen's right to terminate shall not arise unless such failure to deliver (or cause to be delivered) continues for more than thirty (30) days from the date such delivery was required; or (iii) any other condition of Cowen's obligations hereunder is not fulfilled, or (iv), any suspension or limitation of trading in the Placement

31

Shares or in securities generally on the Nasdaq Capital Market shall have occurred. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 7(g) (Expenses), Section 9 (Indemnification and Contribution), Section 10 (Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery), Section 16 (Applicable Law; Consent to Jurisdiction) and Section 17 (Waiver of Jury Trial) hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination. If Cowen elects to terminate this Agreement as provided in this Section 11(a), Cowen shall provide the required notice as specified in Section 12 (Notices).

(b) The Company shall have the right, by giving ten (10) days' written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 7(g), Section 9, Section 10, Section 16 and Section 17 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(c) Cowen shall have the right, by giving ten (10) days' written notice as hereinafter specified, to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 7(g), Section 9, Section 10, Section 16 and Section 17 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(d) Unless earlier terminated pursuant to this Section 11, this Agreement shall automatically terminate upon the issuance and sale of all of the Placement Shares through Cowen on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein; *provided* that the provisions of Section 7(g), Section 9, Section 10, Section 16 and Section 17 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(e) This Agreement shall remain in full force and effect unless terminated pursuant to Sections 11(a), (b), (c), or (d) above or otherwise by mutual agreement of the parties; *provided, however,* that any such termination by mutual agreement shall in all cases be deemed to provide that Section 7(g), Section 9, Section 10, Section 16 and Section 17 shall remain in full force and effect.

(f) Any termination of this Agreement shall be effective on the date specified in such notice of termination; *provided, however,* that such termination shall not be effective until the close of business on the date of receipt of such notice by Cowen or the Company, as the case may be. If such termination shall occur prior to the Settlement Date for any sale of Placement Shares, such Placement Shares shall settle in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement.

(g) Subject to the additional limitations set forth in Section 7 hereof, in the event of termination of this Agreement prior to the sale of any Placement Shares, Cowen shall be entitled only to reimbursement of its out-of-pocket expenses actually incurred.

32

12. Notices. All notices or other communications required or permitted to be given by any party to any other party pursuant to the terms of this Agreement shall be in writing, unless otherwise specified in this Agreement, and if sent to Cowen, shall be delivered to Cowen at Cowen and Company, LLC, 599 Lexington Avenue, New York, NY 10022, fax no. 646-562-1124, Attention: General Counsel, with a copy to LeClairRyan, 885 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10022, Attention: James T. Seery, Email: james.seery@leclairryan.com; or if sent to the Company, shall be delivered to Sunshine Heart, Inc., 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, Minnesota 55344, Attention: Chief Executive Officer, with a copy to Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP, Columbia Plaza, 350 East Michigan Avenue, Suite 300, Kalamazoo, Michigan 49007, Attention: Phillip D. Torrence, Esq. Each party to this Agreement may change such address for notices by sending to the parties to this Agreement written notice of a new address for such purpose. Each such notice or other communication shall be deemed given (i) when delivered personally or by verifiable facsimile transmission (with an original to follow) on or before 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on a Business Day (as defined below), or, if such day is not a Business Day on the next succeeding Business Day, (ii) on the next Business Day after timely delivery to a nationally-recognized overnight courier and (iii) on the Business Day actually received if deposited in

the U.S. mail (certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid). For purposes of this Agreement, “**Business Day**” shall mean any day on which Nasdaq and commercial banks in the City of New York are open for business.

13. **Successors and Assigns.** This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the Company and Cowen and their respective successors and the affiliates, controlling persons, officers and directors referred to in **Section 9** hereof. References to any of the parties contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to include the successors and permitted assigns of such party. Nothing in this Agreement, express or implied, is intended to confer upon any party other than the parties hereto or their respective successors and permitted assigns any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of this Agreement, except as expressly provided in this Agreement. Neither party may assign its rights or obligations under this Agreement without the prior written consent of the other party; *provided, however*, that Cowen may assign its rights and obligations hereunder to an affiliate of Cowen without obtaining the Company’s consent.

14. **Adjustments for Share Splits.** The parties acknowledge and agree that all share-related numbers contained in this Agreement shall be adjusted to take into account any share split, share dividend or similar event effected with respect to the Common Stock.

15. **Entire Agreement; Amendment; Severability.** This Agreement (including all schedules and exhibits attached hereto and Placement Notices issued pursuant hereto) and any other writing entered into by the parties relating to this Agreement constitute the entire agreement and supersede all other prior and contemporaneous agreements and undertakings, both written and oral, among the parties hereto with regard to the subject matter hereof. Neither this Agreement nor any term hereof may be amended except pursuant to a written instrument executed by the Company and Cowen. In the event that any one or more of the provisions contained herein, or the application thereof in any circumstance, is held invalid, illegal or unenforceable as written by a court of competent jurisdiction, then such provision shall be given full force and effect to the fullest possible extent that it is valid, legal and enforceable, and the remainder of the terms and provisions herein shall be construed as if such invalid, illegal or unenforceable term or provision was not contained herein, but only to the extent that giving effect to such provision and the

33

remainder of the terms and provisions hereof shall be in accordance with the intent of the parties as reflected in this Agreement.

16. **Applicable Law; Consent to Jurisdiction.** This Agreement shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the internal laws of the State of New York without regard to the principles of conflicts of laws. Each party hereby irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York, borough of Manhattan, for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection with any transaction contemplated hereby, and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any suit, action or proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum or that the venue of such suit, action or proceeding is improper. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such suit, action or proceeding by mailing a copy thereof (certified or registered mail, return receipt requested) to such party at the address in effect for notices to it under this Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any manner permitted by law.

17. **Waiver of Jury Trial.** The Company and Cowen each hereby irrevocably waives any right it may have to a trial by jury in respect of any claim based upon or arising out of this Agreement or any transaction contemplated hereby.

18. **Absence of Fiduciary Relationship.** The Company acknowledges and agrees that:

(a) Cowen has been retained solely to act as sales agent in connection with the sale of the Common Stock and that no fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship between the Company and Cowen has been created in respect of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, irrespective of whether Cowen has advised or is advising the Company on other matters;

(b) the Company is capable of evaluating and understanding and understands and accepts the terms, risks and conditions of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

(c) the Company has been advised that Cowen and its affiliates are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and that Cowen has no obligation to disclose such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship; and

(d) the Company waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims it may have against Cowen, for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty and agrees that Cowen shall have no liability (whether direct or indirect) to the Company in respect of such a fiduciary claim or to any person asserting a fiduciary duty claim on behalf of or in right of the Company, including stockholders, partners, employees or creditors of the Company.

34

19. **Counterparts.** This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of an executed Agreement by one party to the other may be made by facsimile or electronic transmission.

20. **Use of Information.** Cowen may not provide any information gained in connection with this Agreement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, including due diligence, to any third party other than its legal counsel advising it on this Agreement unless (i) required pursuant to applicable rules, regulations or orders of any governmental, quasi-governmental, regulatory, or judicial entity or any stock exchange, (ii) it is in connection with the assertion by Cowen of a due diligence defense or claim for indemnification hereunder, or (iii) expressly approved by the Company in writing.

21. **Definitions.** As used in this Agreement, the following term has the meaning set forth below:

(a) "Applicable Time" means the date of this Agreement, each Representation Date, the date on which a Placement Notice is given, and any date on which Placement Shares are sold hereunder.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Blank]

35

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Company and Cowen, please so indicate in the space provided below for that purpose, whereupon this letter shall constitute a binding agreement between the Company and Cowen.

Very truly yours,

COWEN AND COMPANY, LLC

By: /s/ Kevin X. Reynolds
Name: Kevin X. Reynolds
Title: Managing Director, Co-Head of Debt Capital Markets

**ACCEPTED as of the date
first-above written:**

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: /s/ Jeffrey S. Mathiesen
Name: Jeffrey S. Mathiesen
Title: CFO

SCHEDULE 1

FORM OF PLACEMENT NOTICE

From: []
Cc: []
To: []
Subject: Cowen at the Market Offering—Placement Notice

Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Sales Agreement between Sunshine Heart, Inc. (the "Company"), and Cowen and Company, LLC ("Cowen") dated March , 2014, I hereby request on behalf of the Company that Cowen sell up to [] shares of the Company's common stock, par value 0.0001 per share, at a minimum market price of \$ per share. Sales should begin on the date of this Notice and shall continue until [DATE] [all shares are sold].

SCHEDULE 2

The Company

David Rosa Chief Executive Officer
Jeff Mathiesen Chief Financial Officer

Cowen

Robert Sine Director
William Follis Director

SCHEDULE 3

Compensation

OFFICER CERTIFICATE

The undersigned, the duly qualified and elected _____, of Sunshine Heart, Inc. ("**Company**"), a Delaware corporation, does hereby certify in such capacity and on behalf of the Company, pursuant to Section 7(m) of the Sales Agreement dated March _____, 2014 (the "**Sales Agreement**") between the Company and Cowen and Company, LLC, that to the best of the knowledge of the undersigned.

(i) The representations and warranties of the Company in Section 6 of the Sales Agreement (A) to the extent such representations and warranties are subject to qualifications and exceptions contained therein relating to materiality or Material Adverse Change are true and correct on and as of the date hereof with the same force and effect as if expressly made on and as of the date hereof, except for those representations and warranties that speak solely as of a specific date and which were true and correct as of such date, and (B) to the extent such representations and warranties are not subject to any qualifications or exceptions, are true and correct in all material respects as of the date hereof as if made on and as of the date hereof with the same force and effect as if expressly made on and as of the date hereof except for those representations and warranties that speak solely as of a specific date and which were true and correct as of such date; and

(ii) The Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied pursuant to the Sales Agreement at or prior to the date hereof.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Name:

Title:

Date: _____

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.,
Issuer

AND

[TRUSTEE],
Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of [], 20

Senior Debt Securities

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS	1
1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS	1
ARTICLE 2 ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	4
2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES	4
2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE	6
2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT	7
2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATIONS	8
2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	8
2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES	9
2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES	10
2.08 CANCELLATION	10
2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE	10
2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT	11
2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES	11
ARTICLE 3 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	12
3.01 REDEMPTION	12
3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION	12
3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION	13
3.04 SINKING FUND	13
3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES	14
3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND	14
ARTICLE 4 COVENANTS	14
4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	14
4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY	15
4.03 PAYING AGENTS	15
4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE	16
4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS	16
ARTICLE 5 SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	16
5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS	16
5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS	16
5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY	16
5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE	17

ARTICLE 6 REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	17
6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT	17
6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE	18

6.03	APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED	20
6.04	LIMITATION ON SUITS	20
6.05	RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER	21
6.06	CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS	21
6.07	UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS	21
ARTICLE 7 CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE		22
7.01	CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE	22
7.02	CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	23
7.03	TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES	24
7.04	MAY HOLD SECURITIES	24
7.05	MONEYS HELD IN TRUST	24
7.06	COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT	24
7.07	RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE	25
7.08	DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS	25
7.09	CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY	25
7.10	RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR	25
7.11	ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR	26
7.12	MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS	27
7.13	PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY	27
7.14	NOTICE OF DEFAULT	28
ARTICLE 8 CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS		28
8.01	EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	28
8.02	PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	28
8.03	WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS	29
8.04	CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED	29
8.05	ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS	29
ARTICLE 9 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		29
9.01	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	29
9.02	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	30
9.03	EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
9.04	SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
9.05	EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
ARTICLE 10 SUCCESSOR ENTITY		32
10.01	COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.	32
10.02	SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED	32
10.03	EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE	32
ARTICLE 11 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE		33
ii		
11.01	SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	33
11.02	DISCHARGE OF OBLIGATIONS	33
11.03	DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST	33
11.04	PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS	33
11.05	REPAYMENT TO COMPANY	34
ARTICLE 12 IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS		34
12.01	NO RECOURSE	34
ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS		34
13.01	EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	34
13.02	ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR	34
13.03	SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS	34
13.04	NOTICES	35
13.05	GOVERNING LAW	35
13.06	TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT	35
13.07	CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS AS TO CONDITIONS PRECEDENT	35
13.08	PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS	35
13.09	CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	36
13.10	COUNTERPARTS	36
13.11	SEPARABILITY	36
13.12	COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	36

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

INDENTURE

This INDENTURE (this “*Indenture*”), is made effective as of [], 20 , between SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and [TRUSTEE], as trustee (the “*Trustee*”).

BACKGROUND

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of senior debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “*Securities*”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as in this Indenture provided, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the holders of Securities:

**ARTICLE 1
DEFINITIONS**

1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS. The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or that are by reference in such Act defined in the Securities Act (except as herein or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in the Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“*Authenticating Agent*” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“*Bankruptcy Law*” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“*Board of Directors*” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“*Board Resolution*” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and

effect on the date of such certification.

“*Business Day*” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a day on which federal or state banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City of New York, or in the city of the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“*Certificate*” means a certificate signed by any Officer. The Certificate need not comply with the provisions of Section 13.07.

“*Company*” means SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, and, subject to the provisions of Article 10, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“*Corporate Trust Office*” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at [].

“*Custodian*” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“*Default*” means any event, act or condition that with notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“*Depository*” means, with respect to Securities of any series for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or 2.11.

“*Event of Default*” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series, any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“*Exchange Act*” means the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Global Security” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with the Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“Governmental Obligations” means securities that are (a) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (b) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof at any time prior to the stated maturity of the Securities, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such

depository receipt.

“herein,” “hereof,” and “hereunder,” and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“Officer” means, with respect to the Company, the chairman of the Board of Directors, a chief executive officer, a president, a chief financial officer, a chief operating officer, any executive vice president, any senior vice president, any vice president, the treasurer or any assistant treasurer, the controller or any assistant controller or the secretary or any assistant secretary.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by any two Officers. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“Opinion of Counsel” means an opinion in writing subject to customary exceptions of legal counsel, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company, that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“Outstanding,” when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except: (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article 3 provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, joint-stock company, limited liability company, association, trust, unincorporated organization, any other entity or organization, including a government or political subdivision or an agency or instrumentality thereof.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“Responsible Officer” when used with respect to the Trustee means the chairman of its board of

directors, the chief executive officer, the president, any vice president, the secretary, the treasurer, any trust officer, any corporate trust officer or any other officer or assistant officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Securities” means the debt Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“Securityholder,” “holder of Securities,” “registered holder,” or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered on the books of the Company kept for that purpose in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“Security Register” and **“Security Registrar”** shall have the meanings as set forth in Section 2.05.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any Person: (a) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries; (b) any general partnership, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries; and (c) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“Trustee” means [], and, subject to the provisions of Article 7, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

“Voting Stock,” as applied to stock of any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

ARTICLE 2 ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES.

(a) The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers’ Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

(i) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of

4

that series from all other Securities);

(ii) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);

(iii) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable, any original issue discount that may apply to the Securities of that series upon their issuance, the principal amount due at maturity, and the place(s) of payment;

(iv) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any;

(v) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date for the determination of holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates or the manner of determination of such record dates;

(vi) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of such extension;

(vii) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;

(viii) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund, mandatory redemption, or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(ix) the form of the Securities of the series including the form of the certificate of authentication for such series;

(x) if other than denominations of U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(xi) any and all other terms (including terms, to the extent applicable, relating to any auction or remarketing of the Securities of that series and any security for the obligations of the Company with respect to such Securities) with respect to such series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture, as amended by any supplemental indenture) including any terms which may be required by or advisable under U.S. laws or regulations or advisable in connection with the marketing of Securities of that series;

(xii) whether the Securities are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the terms and the identity of the Depositary for such series;

(xiii) whether the Securities will be convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company or any other Person and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, including the conversion or exchange price, as applicable, or how it will be calculated and may be adjusted, any mandatory or optional (at the

5

Company's option or the holders' option) conversion or exchange features, and the applicable conversion or exchange period;

(xiv) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01;

(xv) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants (which may include, among other restrictions, restrictions on the Company's ability or the ability of the Company's Subsidiaries to: incur additional indebtedness; issue additional securities; create liens; pay dividends or make distributions in respect of their capital stock; redeem capital stock; place restrictions on such Subsidiaries placing restrictions on their ability to pay dividends, make distributions or transfer assets; make investments or other restricted payments; sell or otherwise dispose of assets; enter into sale-leaseback transactions; engage in transactions with stockholders and affiliates; issue or sell stock of their Subsidiaries; or effect a consolidation or merger) or financial covenants (which may include, among other financial covenants, financial covenants that require the Company and its Subsidiaries to maintain specified interest coverage, fixed charge, cash flow-based or asset-based ratios) provided for with respect to the Securities of the series;

(xvi) if other than dollars, the coin or currency in which the Securities of the series are denominated (including, but not limited to, foreign currency);

(xvii) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes; and

(xviii) any restrictions on transfer, sale or assignment of the Securities of the series.

(b) All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto.

(c) If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate of the Company setting forth the terms of the series.

(d) Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates.

2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE. The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, and they may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT.

(a) The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(a)(x). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rate specified with respect to that series. Subject to Section 2.01(a)(xvi), the principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption thereof prior to maturity, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication. Interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months.

(b) The interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03.

(c) Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called "**Defaulted Interest**") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (i) or clause (ii) below:

(i) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than ten days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than ten days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than ten days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest

and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(ii) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

7

(d) Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term “*regular record date*” as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities and any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the 15th day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the first day of the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

(e) Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATIONS.

(a) The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by one of its Officers. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature.

(b) The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been an Officer, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be such an officer of the Company. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee.

(c) A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by an Officer, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities.

(d) In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture.

(e) The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that

8

the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose or such other location designated by the Company, a register or registers (herein referred to as the “*Security Register*”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the “*Security Registrar*”).

(c) Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount.

(d) All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered holder or by such holder’s duly authorized attorney in writing.

(e) Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers’ Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, no service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer.

(f) The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption, other than the unredeemed portion of any such Securities being redeemed in part. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose and the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as

9

definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES.

(a) In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

(b) In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

(c) Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

2.08 CANCELLATION. All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE. Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the holders of the Securities any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for

10

the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the holders of the Securities.

2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT.

(a) So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such

laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately.

(b) Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto.

2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES.

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect:

“EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE PROVIDED IN SECTION 2.11 OF THE INDENTURE, THIS SECURITY MAY BE TRANSFERRED, IN WHOLE BUT NOT IN PART, ONLY TO ANOTHER NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR TO A SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY OR TO A NOMINEE OF SUCH SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY.”

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable

statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, or if an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing and the Company has received a request from the Depository, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and, subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officers' Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depository for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

ARTICLE 3 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS

3.01 REDEMPTION. The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION.

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with any right the Company reserved for itself to do so pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the Company shall, or shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid, a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction.

Each such notice of redemption shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to

accrue and that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed.

In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than U.S. \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by an Officer, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION.

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an interest payment date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

3.04 SINKING FUND.

(a) The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for

the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series.

(b) The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a "**mandatory sinking fund payment**," and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an "**optional sinking fund payment**." If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES. The Company (a) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series and (b) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND. Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officers' Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE 4 COVENANTS

4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST. The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of a series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities. Payments of principal on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check drawn on and mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions in writing to the Trustee no later than 15 days prior

to the relevant payment date). Payments of interest on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such a wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have

furnished wire instructions in writing to the Security Registrar and the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date.

4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY. So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (a) Securities of that series may be presented for payment, (b) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (c) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by any officer authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands. The Company initially appoints the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee as its paying agent with respect to the Securities.

4.03 PAYING AGENTS.

(a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(i) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(ii) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(iii) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(ii) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and

(iv) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company

will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, (i) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and (ii) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by the Company or any paying agent to the Trustee, the Company or such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE. The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.10, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS. The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell or convey all or substantially all of its property to any other Person unless the provisions of Article 10 hereof are complied with.

**ARTICLE 5
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE**

5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS. The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) within 15 days after each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form

and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity).

(b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and, in connection with any such communications, the Trustee shall satisfy its obligations under Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the provisions of Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY. The Company covenants and agrees to provide a copy to the

16

Trustee, after the Company files the same with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”), copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the SEC may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company files with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; provided, however, the Company shall not be required to deliver to the Trustee any materials for which the Company has sought and received confidential treatment by the SEC.

5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE.

(a) If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee, 60 days after each May 1, shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, a brief report dated as of such May 1, which complies with Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each securities exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the SEC. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

ARTICLE 6

REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, “*Event of Default*” means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing:

(i) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and such default continues for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(ii) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(iii) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

17

(iv) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law (A) commences a voluntary case, (B) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case, (C) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property or (D) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or

(v) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that (A) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case, (B) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property or (C) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days.

(b) In each and every such case (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (iv) or clause (v) above), unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the

Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (iv) or clause (v) above occurs, the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series shall automatically be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or the holders of the Securities.

(c) At any time after the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06, and (ii) any and all Events of Default under the Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal on (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.06. No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE.

(a) The Company covenants that (i) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment

18

of interest on any of the Securities of a series, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 Business Days, or (ii) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration or otherwise then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law or equity out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under the Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.06.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of a series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.06, be for the ratable benefit of the holders of the Securities of such series.

(e) In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in the Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

19

(f) Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED. Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid: (a) first, to the payment of reasonable costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; (b) second, to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively; and (c) third, to the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person lawfully entitled thereto.

6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS.

(a) No holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue of or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (i) such holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided; (ii) the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (iii) such holder or holders shall have offered to the Trustee such reasonable indemnity as it may require against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; (iv) the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and (v) during such 90 day period, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

(b) Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary or any other provisions of this Indenture, the right of any holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and holder and the Trustee, that no one or more holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue of or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

20

6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed, subject to the Trustee's duties under the Trust Indenture Act, would involve the Trustee in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the Securityholders not involved in the proceeding. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)). Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS. All parties to this Indenture agree, and each holder of any Securities by such holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

21

**ARTICLE 7
CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE**

7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE.

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of such series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of such series those rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred:

(A) the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(B) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and

(iv) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability is not reasonably assured to it under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

7.02 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE. Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

(a) The Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company by any authorized officer of the Company (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived), to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents, unless requested in writing so to do by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the particular series affected thereby (determined as provided in Section 8.04); provided, however, that if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require reasonable indemnity against such costs, expenses or liabilities as a condition to so proceeding. The reasonable expense of every such examination shall be paid by the Company or, if paid by the Trustee, shall be repaid by the Company upon demand; and

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

In addition, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have knowledge of any Default or Event of Default except (y) any Event of Default occurring pursuant to Sections 6.01(a)(i) and 6.01(a)(ii) hereof or (z) any Default or Event of Default of which the Trustee shall have received written notification in the manner set forth in this Indenture or a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have obtained actual

knowledge. Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under Section 5.03 is for informational purposes only and the information and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein, or determinable from information contained therein including the Company's compliance with any of their covenants thereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on an Officers' Certificate).

7.03 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES.

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

7.04 MAY HOLD SECURITIES. The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

7.05 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST. Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

7.06 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such reasonable compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust) as the Company and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its negligence or bad faith and except as the Company and Trustee may from time to time agree in writing. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee and arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim of liability in the premises.

(b) The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee for reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder. Such additional indebtedness shall be secured by a lien prior

to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the holders of particular Securities.

7.07 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE. Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it reasonably necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

7.08 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS. If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

7.09 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY. There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any state or territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Securities and Exchange Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having a combined capital and surplus of at least U.S. \$50,000,000, and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority. If such corporation or other Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such

corporation or other Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.10.

7.10 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR.

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

25

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.08 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.09 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation;

then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.11.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

7.11 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions

26

as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, (ii) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the

performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

7.12 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS. Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate trust business of the Trustee, including the administration of the trust created by this Indenture, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.08 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.09, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

7.13 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY. The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in

27

Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

7.14 NOTICE OF DEFAULT. If any Default or any Event of Default occurs and is continuing and if such Default or Event of Default is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act notice of the Default or Event of Default within 45 days after it occurs, unless such Default or Event of Default has been cured; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Securityholders.

ARTICLE 8 CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such holders of Securities of that series in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing.

(b) If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

(a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.

(b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.

28

The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS. Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Company as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of, premium, if any, and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED. In determining whether the holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS. At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such holder and upon all future holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the holders of all the Securities of that series.

ARTICLE 9 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS. In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

(a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, or inconsistency herein or in the Securities of any series;

29

(b) to comply with Article 10;

(c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;

(d) to add to the covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions relating to the Company for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series), to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an Event of Default, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company;

(e) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities, as herein set forth;

(f) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;

(g) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of Securities;

(h) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee; or

(i) to comply with any requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission or any successor in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS. With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.01) of the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby, (a) extend the fixed maturity of any Securities of any series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, or reduce the rate or extend the time of payment of interest thereon, or reduce any premium payable upon

30

the redemption thereof or (b) reduce the aforesaid percentage of Securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any such supplemental indenture. It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES. Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES. Securities of any series affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any securities exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

(a) Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may receive an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article to join in the execution thereof; provided, however, that such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel need not be provided in connection with the execution of a supplemental indenture that establishes the terms of a series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

(b) Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Trustee to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

31

**ARTICLE 10
SUCCESSOR ENTITY**

10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC. Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, nothing contained in this Indenture shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other corporation (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, (a) the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture with respect to each series or established with respect to such series pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) reasonably satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property and (b) in the event that the Securities of any series then Outstanding are convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company, such entity shall, by such supplemental indenture, make provision so that the Securityholders of Securities of that series shall thereafter be entitled to receive upon conversion or exchange of such Securities the number of securities or property to which a holder of the number of shares of common stock or other securities of the Company deliverable upon conversion or exchange of those Securities would have been entitled had such conversion or exchange occurred immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition.

10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED.

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by the successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee and satisfactory in form to the Trustee, of the obligations set forth under Section 10.01 on all

of the Securities of all series Outstanding, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may receive an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that

any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE 11 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE. If at any time: (a) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee for cancellation all Securities of a series theretofore authenticated and not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (other than any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07 and Securities for whose payment money or Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereupon repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05); or (b) all such Securities of a particular series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation shall have become due and payable, or are by their terms to become due and payable within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds the entire amount in moneys or Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof, sufficient in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay at maturity or upon redemption all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company then this Indenture shall thereupon cease to be of further effect with respect to such series except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03 and 7.10, that shall survive until the date of maturity or redemption date, as the case may be, and Sections 7.06 and 11.05, that shall survive to such date and thereafter, and the Trustee, on demand of the Company and at the cost and expense of the Company shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction of and discharging this Indenture with respect to such series.

11.02 DISCHARGE OF OBLIGATIONS. If at any time all such Securities of a particular series not heretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or that have not become due and payable as described in Section 11.01 shall have been paid by the Company by depositing irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds moneys or an amount of Governmental Obligations sufficient to pay at maturity or upon redemption all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to such series, then after the date such moneys or Governmental Obligations, as the case may be, are deposited with the Trustee the obligations of the Company under this Indenture with respect to such series shall cease to be of further effect except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03, 7.06, 7.10 and 11.05 hereof that shall survive until such Securities shall mature and be paid. Thereafter, Sections 7.06 and 11.05 shall survive.

11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST. All moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as its own paying agent), to the holders of the particular series of Securities for the payment or redemption of which such moneys or Governmental Obligations have been deposited with the Trustee.

11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS. In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon

such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY. Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the holders of such Securities for at least two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, or such other shorter period set forth in applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law, shall be repaid to the Company on May 31 of each year or upon the Company's request or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as a general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

ARTICLE 12 IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

12.01 NO RECOURSE. No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company

or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture made by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR. Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS. The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved

34

to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

13.04 NOTICES. Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice, request or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given, made or served by the Trustee or by the holders of Securities or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited in first class mail, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows: 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, MN 55344. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

13.05 GOVERNING LAW. This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the internal laws of the State of New York, and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of said State, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT. It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

13.07 CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS AS TO CONDITIONS PRECEDENT.

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture (other than the certificate to be delivered pursuant to Section 13.12) relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include (i) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition; (ii) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (iii) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is reasonably necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (iv) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS. Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

35

13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT. If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control.

13.10 COUNTERPARTS. This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

13.11 SEPARABILITY. In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

13.12 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES. The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year during which any Securities of any series were outstanding, an officer’s certificate stating whether or not the signers know of any Default or Event of Default that occurred during such fiscal year. Such certificate shall contain a certification from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company that a review has been conducted of the activities of the Company and the Company’s performance under this Indenture and that the Company has complied with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 13.12, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under this Indenture. If the officer of the Company signing such certificate has knowledge of such a Default or Event of Default, the certificate shall describe any such Default or Event of Default and its status.

SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE

36

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

[TRUSTEE], as Trustee

By: _____
 Name: _____
 Title: _____

By: _____
 Name: _____
 Title: _____

37

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)

Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended	Section of Indenture
310(a)	7.09
310(b)	7.08
	7.10
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	7.13
311(b)	7.13
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	5.01
	5.02(a)
312(b)	5.02(c)
312(c)	5.02(c)
313(a)	5.04(a)
313(b)	5.04(b)
313(c)	5.04(a)
	5.04(b)
313(d)	5.04(c)
314(a)	5.03
	13.12
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)	13.07(a)
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	13.07(b)
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a)	7.01(a)
	7.01(b)
315(b)	7.14
315(c)	7.01
315(d)	7.01(b)
315(e)	6.07
316(a)	6.06
	8.04
316(b)	6.04
316(c)	8.01
317(a)	6.02
317(b)	4.03
318(a)	13.09

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.



SUNSHINE HEART, INC.,
Issuer

AND

[TRUSTEE],
Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of [], 20

Subordinated Debt Securities

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS	1
1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS	1
ARTICLE 2 ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	4
2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES	4
2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE	6
2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT	7
2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATIONS	8
2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE	8
2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES	9
2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES	10
2.08 CANCELLATION	10
2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE	11
2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT	11
2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES	11
ARTICLE 3 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	12
3.01 REDEMPTION	12
3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION	12
3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION	13
3.04 SINKING FUND	14
3.05 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES	14
3.06 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND	14
ARTICLE 4 COVENANTS	14
4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST	14
4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY	15
4.03 PAYING AGENTS	15
4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE	16
4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS	16
ARTICLE 5 SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	16
5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS	16
5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS	16
5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY	17
5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE	17

ARTICLE 6 REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	17
6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT	17
6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE	19

6.03	APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED	20
6.04	LIMITATION ON SUITS	20
6.05	RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER	21
6.06	CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS	21
6.07	UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS	21
ARTICLE 7 CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE		22
7.01	CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE	22
7.02	CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE	23
7.03	TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES	24
7.04	MAY HOLD SECURITIES	24
7.05	MONEYS HELD IN TRUST	24
7.06	COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT	24
7.07	RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE	25
7.08	DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS	25
7.09	CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY	25
7.10	RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR	25
7.11	ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR	26
7.12	MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS	27
7.13	PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY	28
7.14	NOTICE OF DEFAULT	28
ARTICLE 8 CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS		28
8.01	EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	28
8.02	PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS	28
8.03	WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS	29
8.04	CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED	29
8.05	ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS	29
ARTICLE 9 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		29
9.01	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	29
9.02	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS	30
9.03	EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
9.04	SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
9.05	EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	31
ARTICLE 10 SUCCESSOR ENTITY		32
10.01	COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.	32
10.02	SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED	32
10.03	EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE	33
ARTICLE 11 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE		33
ii		
<hr/>		
11.01	SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	33
11.02	DISCHARGE OF OBLIGATIONS	33
11.03	DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST	33
11.04	PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS	34
11.05	REPAYMENT TO COMPANY	34
ARTICLE 12 IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS		34
12.01	NO RECOURSE	34
ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS		34
13.01	EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	34
13.02	ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR	34
13.03	SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS	35
13.04	NOTICES	35
13.05	GOVERNING LAW	35
13.06	TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT	35
13.07	CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS AS TO CONDITIONS PRECEDENT	35
13.08	PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS	35
13.09	CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT	36
13.10	COUNTERPARTS	36
13.11	SEPARABILITY	36
13.12	COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	36

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

INDENTURE

This INDENTURE (this “*Indenture*”), is made effective as of [], 20 , between SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and [TRUSTEE], as trustee (the “*Trustee*”).

BACKGROUND

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of subordinated debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “*Securities*”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as in this Indenture provided, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the holders of Securities:

**ARTICLE 1
DEFINITIONS**

1.01 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS. The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or that are by reference in such Act defined in the Securities Act (except as herein or any indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in the Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“*Authenticating Agent*” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“*Bankruptcy Law*” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“*Board of Directors*” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“*Board Resolution*” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and

effect on the date of such certification.

“*Business Day*” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a day on which federal or state banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City of New York, or in the city of the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“*Certificate*” means a certificate signed by any Officer. The Certificate need not comply with the provisions of Section 13.07.

“*Company*” means SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, and, subject to the provisions of Article 10, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“*Corporate Trust Office*” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at [].

“*Custodian*” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“*Default*” means any event, act or condition that with notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“*Depository*” means, with respect to Securities of any series for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or 2.11.

“Event of Default” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series, any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Global Security” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with the Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“Governmental Obligations” means securities that are (a) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (b) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof at any time prior to the stated maturity of the Securities, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such

2

depository receipt.

“herein,” “hereof,” and “hereunder,” and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“Officer” means, with respect to the Company, the chairman of the Board of Directors, a chief executive officer, a president, a chief financial officer, a chief operating officer, any executive vice president, any senior vice president, any vice president, the treasurer or any assistant treasurer, the controller or any assistant controller or the secretary or any assistant secretary.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by any two Officers. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“Opinion of Counsel” means an opinion in writing subject to customary exceptions of legal counsel, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company, that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“Outstanding,” when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except: (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article 3 provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, joint-stock company, limited liability company, association, trust, unincorporated organization, any other entity or organization, including a government or political subdivision or an agency or instrumentality thereof.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“Responsible Officer” when used with respect to the Trustee means the chairman of its board of

3

directors, the chief executive officer, the president, any vice president, the secretary, the treasurer, any trust officer, any corporate trust officer or any other officer or assistant officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Securities” means the debt Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“Securityholder,” “holder of Securities,” “registered holder,” or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered on the books of the Company kept for that purpose in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“Security Register” and **“Security Registrar”** shall have the meanings as set forth in Section 2.05.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any Person: (a) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries; (b) any general partnership, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries; and (c) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“Trustee” means [], and, subject to the provisions of Article 7, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

“Voting Stock,” as applied to stock of any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

ARTICLE 2 ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

2.01 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES.

(a) The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers’ Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

(i) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of

4

that series from all other Securities);

(ii) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);

(iii) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable, any original issue discount that may apply to the Securities of that series upon their issuance, the principal amount due at maturity, and the place(s) of payment;

(iv) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any;

(v) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date for the determination of holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates or the manner of determination of such record dates;

(vi) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of such extension;

(vii) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;

(viii) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund, mandatory redemption, or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(ix) the form of the Securities of the series including the form of the certificate of authentication for such series;

(x) if other than denominations of U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(xi) any and all other terms (including terms, to the extent applicable, relating to any auction or remarketing of the Securities of that series and any security for the obligations of the Company with respect to such Securities) with respect to such series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture, as amended by any supplemental indenture) including any terms which may be required by or advisable under U.S. laws or regulations or advisable in connection with the marketing of Securities of that series;

(xii) whether the Securities are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the terms and the identity of the Depository for such series;

(xiii) whether the Securities will be convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company or any other Person and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, including the conversion or exchange price, as applicable, or how it will be calculated and may be adjusted, any mandatory or optional (at the

Company's option or the holders' option) conversion or exchange features, and the applicable conversion or exchange period;

(xiv) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01;

(xv) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants (which may include, among other restrictions, restrictions on the Company's ability or the ability of the Company's Subsidiaries to: incur additional indebtedness; issue additional securities; create liens; pay dividends or make distributions in respect of their capital stock; redeem capital stock; place restrictions on such Subsidiaries placing restrictions on their ability to pay dividends, make distributions or transfer assets; make investments or other restricted payments; sell or otherwise dispose of assets; enter into sale-leaseback transactions; engage in transactions with stockholders and affiliates; issue or sell stock of their Subsidiaries; or effect a consolidation or merger) or financial covenants (which may include, among other financial covenants, financial covenants that require the Company and its Subsidiaries to maintain specified interest coverage, fixed charge, cash flow-based or asset-based ratios) provided for with respect to the Securities of the series;

(xvi) if other than dollars, the coin or currency in which the Securities of the series are denominated (including, but not limited to, foreign currency);

(xvii) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes;

(xviii) any restrictions on transfer, sale or assignment of the Securities of the series; and

(xix) the subordination terms of the Securities of the series.

(b) All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto.

(c) If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate of the Company setting forth the terms of the series.

(d) Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates.

2.02 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE. The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, and they may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with

any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

2.03 DENOMINATIONS: PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT.

(a) The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(a)(x). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rate specified with respect to that series. Subject to Section 2.01(a)(xvi), the principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption thereof prior to maturity, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication. Interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months.

(b) The interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03.

(c) Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called "**Defaulted Interest**") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (i) or clause (ii) below:

(i) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security

and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than ten days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than ten days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than ten days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(ii) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such

Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

(d) Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term “**regular record date**” as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities and any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the 15th day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the first day of the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

(e) Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

2.04 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATIONS.

(a) The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by one of its Officers. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature.

(b) The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been an Officer, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be such an officer of the Company. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee.

(c) A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by an Officer, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities.

(d) In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture.

(e) The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

2.05 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose for other Securities of such series of authorized

denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose or such other location designated by the Company, a register or registers (herein referred to as the “**Security Register**”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the “**Security Registrar**”).

(c) Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the

same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount.

(d) All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered holder or by such holder's duly authorized attorney in writing.

(e) Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, no service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer.

(f) The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption, other than the unredeemed portion of any such Securities being redeemed in part. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

2.06 TEMPORARY SECURITIES. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose and the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or

9

agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

2.07 MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES.

(a) In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

(b) In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

(c) Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

2.08 CANCELLATION. All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

10

2.09 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE. Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the holders of the Securities (and, with respect to the provisions of Article 14, the holders of any indebtedness of the Company to which the Securities of any series are subordinated) any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the

holders of the Securities (and, with respect to the provisions of Article 14, the holders of any indebtedness of the Company to which the Securities of any series are subordinated).

2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT.

(a) So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately.

(b) Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto.

2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES.

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect:

“EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE PROVIDED IN SECTION 2.11 OF THE INDENTURE, THIS SECURITY MAY BE TRANSFERRED, IN WHOLE BUT NOT IN PART, ONLY TO ANOTHER NOMINEE OF THE DEPOSITARY OR TO A SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY OR TO A NOMINEE OF SUCH SUCCESSOR DEPOSITARY.”

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be

transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, or if an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing and the Company has received a request from the Depository, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and, subject to Section 2.04, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officers' Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depository for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

ARTICLE 3 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS

3.01 REDEMPTION. The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

3.02 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION.

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with any right the Company reserved for itself to do so pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the Company shall, or shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid, a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall

furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction.

Each such notice of redemption shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed.

In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to U.S. \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than U.S. \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by an Officer, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

3.03 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION.

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an interest payment date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is

presented shall deliver to the holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

3.04 SINKING FUND.

(a) The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series.

(b) The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a "**mandatory sinking fund payment**," and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an "**optional sinking fund payment**." If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

3.05 **SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES.** The Company (a) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series and (b) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

3.06 **REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND.** Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officers' Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the

expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE 4 COVENANTS

4.01 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST. The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of a series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities. Payments of principal on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check drawn on and mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of

14

Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions in writing to the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date). Payments of interest on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such a wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions in writing to the Security Registrar and the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date.

4.02 MAINTENANCE OF OFFICE OR AGENCY. So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (a) Securities of that series may be presented for payment, (b) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (c) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by any officer authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands. The Company initially appoints the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee as its paying agent with respect to the Securities.

4.03 PAYING AGENTS.

(a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(i) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(ii) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(iii) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(ii) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and

(iv) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of

15

that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, (i) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and (ii) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by the Company or any paying agent to the Trustee, the Company or such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

4.04 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE. The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.10, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

4.05 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS. The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell or convey all or substantially all of its property to any other Person unless the provisions of Article 10 hereof are complied with.

ARTICLE 5 SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE

5.01 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS. The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) within 15 days after each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

5.02 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity).

(b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

16

(c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and, in connection with any such communications, the Trustee shall satisfy its obligations under Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the provisions of Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

5.03 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY. The Company covenants and agrees to provide a copy to the Trustee, after the Company files the same with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the SEC may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company files with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; provided, however, the Company shall not be required to deliver to the Trustee any materials for which the Company has sought and received confidential treatment by the SEC.

5.04 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE.

(a) If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee, 60 days after each May 1, shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, a brief report dated as of such May 1, which complies with Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each securities exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the SEC. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

ARTICLE 6 REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

6.01 EVENTS OF DEFAULT.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, "**Event of Default**" means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing:

(i) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and such default continues for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(ii) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(iii) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of

17

Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be

remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

(iv) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law (A) commences a voluntary case, (B) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case, (C) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property or (D) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or

(v) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that (A) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case, (B) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property or (C) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 days.

(b) In each and every such case (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (iv) or clause (v) above), unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (iv) or clause (v) above occurs, the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series shall automatically be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or the holders of the Securities.

(c) At any time after the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06, and (ii) any and all Events of Default under the Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal on (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.06. No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had

been taken.

6.02 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE.

(a) The Company covenants that (i) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 Business Days, or (ii) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration or otherwise then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law or equity out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under the Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.06.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of a series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.06, be for the ratable benefit of the holders of the Securities of such series.

(e) In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the

Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in the Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

(f) Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

6.03 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED. Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid: (a) first, to the payment of reasonable costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; (b) second, to the payment of all indebtedness of the Company to which such series of Securities is subordinated to the extent required by Section 7.06 and Article 14; (c) third, to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively; and (d) fourth, to the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person lawfully entitled thereto.

6.04 LIMITATION ON SUITS.

(a) No holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (i) such holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided; (ii) the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (iii) such holder or holders shall have offered to the Trustee such reasonable indemnity as it may require against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; (iv) the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and (v) during such 90 day period, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

(b) Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary or any other provisions of this Indenture, the right of any holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and holder and the Trustee, that no one or more holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such holder, or to enforce any right under

this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

6.05 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

6.06 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed, subject to the Trustee's duties under the Trust Indenture Act, would involve the Trustee in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the Securityholders not involved in the proceeding. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.04, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the

terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)). Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

6.07 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS. All parties to this Indenture agree, and each holder of any Securities by such holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any

Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

ARTICLE 7 CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE

7.01 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE.

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of such series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of such series those rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred:

(A) the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(B) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and

(iv) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability is not reasonably assured to it under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

7.02 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE. Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

(a) The Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company by any authorized officer of the Company (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived), to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents, unless requested in writing so to do by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the particular series affected thereby (determined as provided in Section 8.04); provided, however, that if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require reasonable indemnity against such costs, expenses or liabilities as a condition to so proceeding. The reasonable expense of every such examination shall be paid by the Company or, if paid by the Trustee, shall be repaid by the Company upon demand; and

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for

any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

In addition, the Trustee shall not be deemed to have knowledge of any Default or Event of Default except (y) any Event of Default occurring pursuant to Sections 6.01(a)(i) and 6.01(a)(ii) hereof or (z) any Default or Event of Default of which the Trustee shall have received written notification in the manner set forth in this Indenture or a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have obtained actual knowledge. Delivery of reports, information and documents to the Trustee under Section 5.03 is for informational purposes only and the information and the Trustee's receipt of the foregoing shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein, or determinable from information contained therein including the Company's compliance with any of their covenants thereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on an Officers' Certificate).

7.03 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES.

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

7.04 MAY HOLD SECURITIES. The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

7.05 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST. Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

7.06 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such reasonable compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust) as the Company and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its negligence or bad faith and except as the Company and Trustee may from time to time agree in writing. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee and arising out of or in

connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim of liability in the premises.

(b) The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee for reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute indebtedness of the Company to which the Securities are subordinated. Such additional

indebtedness shall be secured by a lien prior to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the holders of particular Securities.

7.07 RELIANCE ON OFFICERS' CERTIFICATE. Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it reasonably necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

7.08 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS. If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

7.09 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY. There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any state or territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Securities and Exchange Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having a combined capital and surplus of at least U.S. \$50,000,000, and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority. If such corporation or other Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation or other Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.10.

7.10 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR.

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has

25

been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.08 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.09 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation; then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.11.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

7.11 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers,

and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, (ii) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

7.12 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS. Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate trust business of the Trustee, including the administration of the trust created by this Indenture, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.08 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.09, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been

authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

7.13 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY. The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

7.14 NOTICE OF DEFAULT. If any Default or any Event of Default occurs and is continuing and if such Default or Event of Default is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act notice of the Default or Event of Default within 45 days after it occurs, unless such Default or Event of Default has been cured; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Securityholders.

ARTICLE 8 CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

8.01 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.

(a) Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such holders of Securities of that series in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing.

(b) If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of

Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

8.02 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

28

-
- (a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.
 - (b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.

The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

8.03 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS. Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Company as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of, premium, if any, and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

8.04 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED. In determining whether the holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

8.05 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS. At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such holder and upon all future holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the holders of all the Securities of that series.

ARTICLE 9 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

9.01 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS. In addition

29

to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

- (a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, or inconsistency herein or in the Securities of any series;
- (b) to comply with Article 10;
- (c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (d) to add to the covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions relating to the Company for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series), to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an Event of Default, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company;

(e) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities, as herein set forth;

(f) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;

(g) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of Securities;

(h) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee; or

(i) to comply with any requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission or any successor in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

9.02 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS. With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.01) of the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to

30

the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby, (a) extend the fixed maturity of any Securities of any series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, or reduce the rate or extend the time of payment of interest thereon, or reduce any premium payable upon the redemption thereof or (b) reduce the aforesaid percentage of Securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any such supplemental indenture. It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

9.03 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES. Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

9.04 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES. Securities of any series affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any securities exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

9.05 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.

(a) Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may receive an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article to join in the execution thereof; provided, however, that such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel need not be provided in connection with the execution of a supplemental indenture that establishes the terms of a series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

(b) Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security

31

Register. Any failure of the Trustee to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

**ARTICLE 10
SUCCESSOR ENTITY**

10.01 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC. Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, nothing contained in this Indenture shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other corporation (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, (a) the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture with respect to each series or established with respect to such series pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) reasonably satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property and (b) in the event that the Securities of any series then Outstanding are convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company, such entity shall, by such supplemental indenture, make provision so that the Securityholders of Securities of that series shall thereafter be entitled to receive upon conversion or exchange of such Securities the number of securities or property to which a holder of the number of shares of common stock or other securities of the Company deliverable upon conversion or exchange of those Securities would have been entitled had such conversion or exchange occurred immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition.

10.02 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED.

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by the successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee and satisfactory in form to the Trustee, of the obligations set forth under Section 10.01 on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

10.03 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may receive an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article.

**ARTICLE 11
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

11.01 SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE. If at any time: (a) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee for cancellation all Securities of a series theretofore authenticated and not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (other than any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07 and Securities for whose payment money or Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereupon repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05); or (b) all such Securities of a particular series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation shall have become due and payable, or are by their terms to become due and payable within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds the entire amount in moneys or Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof, sufficient in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay at maturity or upon redemption all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company then this Indenture shall thereupon cease to be of further effect with respect to such series except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03 and 7.10, that shall survive until the date of maturity or redemption date, as the case may be, and Sections 7.06 and 11.05, that shall survive to such date and thereafter, and the Trustee, on demand of the Company and at the cost and expense of the Company shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction of and discharging this Indenture with respect to such series.

11.02 DISCHARGE OF OBLIGATIONS. If at any time all such Securities of a particular series not heretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or that have not become due and payable as described in Section 11.01 shall have been paid by the Company by depositing irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds moneys or an amount of Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof sufficient to pay at maturity or upon redemption all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to such series, then after the date such moneys or Governmental Obligations, as the case may be, are deposited with the Trustee the obligations of the Company under this Indenture with respect to such series shall cease to be of further effect except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03, 7.06, 7.10 and 11.05 hereof that shall survive until such Securities shall mature and be paid. Thereafter, Sections 7.06 and 11.05 shall survive.

11.03 DEPOSITED MONEYS TO BE HELD IN TRUST. All moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as

11.04 PAYMENT OF MONEYS HELD BY PAYING AGENTS. In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

11.05 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY. Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the holders of such Securities for at least two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, or such other shorter period set forth in applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law, shall be repaid to the Company on May 31 of each year or upon the Company's request or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as a general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

ARTICLE 12 IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

12.01 NO RECOURSE. No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13.01 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture made by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

13.02 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR. Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

13.03 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS. The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

13.04 NOTICES. Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice, request or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given, made or served by the Trustee or by the holders of Securities or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited in first class mail, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows: 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, MN 55344. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

13.05 GOVERNING LAW. This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the internal laws of the State of New York, and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of said State, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

13.06 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT. It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

13.07 CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS AS TO CONDITIONS PRECEDENT.

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture (other than the certificate to be delivered pursuant to Section 13.12) relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include (i) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition; (ii) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (iii) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is reasonably necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (iv) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

13.08 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS. Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

35

13.09 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT. If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control.

13.10 COUNTERPARTS. This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

13.11 SEPARABILITY. In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

13.12 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES. The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year during which any Securities of any series were outstanding, an officer's certificate stating whether or not the signers know of any Default or Event of Default that occurred during such fiscal year. Such certificate shall contain a certification from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company that a review has been conducted of the activities of the Company and the Company's performance under this Indenture and that the Company has complied with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 13.12, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under this Indenture. If the officer of the Company signing such certificate has knowledge of such a Default or Event of Default, the certificate shall describe any such Default or Event of Default and its status.

ARTICLE 14 SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

14.01 SUBORDINATION TERMS. The payment by the Company of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on any series of Securities issued hereunder shall be subordinated to the extent set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto relating to such Securities.

SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE

36

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

[TRUSTEE], as Trustee

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

37

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)

Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended	Section of Indenture
310(a)	7.09
310(b)	7.08
	7.10
310(c)	Inapplicable
311(a)	7.13
311(b)	7.13
311(c)	Inapplicable
312(a)	5.01
	5.02(a)
312(b)	5.02(c)
312(c)	5.02(c)
313(a)	5.04(a)

313(b)	5.04(b)
313(c)	5.04(a)
	5.04(b)
313(d)	5.04(c)
314(a)	5.03
	13.12
314(b)	Inapplicable
314(c)	13.07(a)
314(d)	Inapplicable
314(e)	13.07(b)
314(f)	Inapplicable
315(a)	7.01(a)
	7.01(b)
315(b)	7.14
315(c)	7.01
315(d)	7.01(b)
315(e)	6.07
316(a)	6.06
	8.04
316(b)	6.04
316(c)	8.01
317(a)	6.02
317(b)	4.03
318(a)	13.09

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

and

, as Warrant Agent

FORM OF COMMON STOCK
WARRANT AGREEMENT

Dated as of

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1		1
1.1	ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS	1
1.2	EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	1
1.3	ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	2
ARTICLE 2		2
2.1	WARRANT PRICE	2
2.2	DURATION OF WARRANTS	2
2.3	EXERCISE OF WARRANTS	3
ARTICLE 3		4
3.1	NO RIGHTS AS WARRANT SECURITYHOLDER CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.2	LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.3	HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS	4
3.4	ADJUSTMENTS	4
3.5	NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS	6
3.6	[If the Warrants are subject to acceleration by the Company, insert—ACCELERATION OF WARRANTS BY THE COMPANY	7
ARTICLE 4		8
4.1	EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	8
4.2	TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	8
4.3	CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	8
ARTICLE 5		9
5.1	WARRANT AGENT	9
5.2	CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT’S OBLIGATIONS	9
5.3	RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS	10
ARTICLE 6		11
6.1	AMENDMENT	11
6.2	NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT	11
6.3	ADDRESSES	11
6.4	GOVERNING LAW	12
6.5	DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS	12
6.6	OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS	12
6.7	PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT	12
6.8	HEADINGS	12
6.9	COUNTERPARTS	12
6.10	INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT	12

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

FORM OF COMMON STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT

This COMMON STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “*Agreement*”), dated as of _____ between SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “*Company*”), and _____, a [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the “*Warrant Agent*”).

BACKGROUND

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [if Warrants are sold with other securities - [title of such other securities being offered] (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (collectively, the “*Warrants*” and each, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase Common Stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “*Warrant Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*”; and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS. [If Warrants alone - Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrants shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after (the “*Detachable Date*”)] [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence Warrants for each [\$ principal amount] [shares] of Other Securities included in such unit.]

1.2 EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in EXHIBIT A hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or

1

to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2 WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 WARRANT PRICE. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof to purchase the number of Warrant Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of \$[] per Warrant Security, subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events, as hereinafter provided. Such purchase price per Warrant Security is referred to in this Agreement as the “*Warrant Price.*”

2.2 DURATION OF WARRANTS. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [] and at or before [] p.m., [City] time, or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the

holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the “*Expiration Date*”). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [] p.m., [City] time, on

the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 EXERCISE OF WARRANTS.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining Warrant Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Security until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company’s satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

ARTICLE 3 OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

3.1 NO RIGHTS AS WARRANT SECURITYHOLDER CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities or to exercise any voting rights, except to the extent expressly set forth in this Agreement or the applicable Warrant Certificate.

3.2 LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like number of Warrant Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of a Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the holder of any Warrant Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, on such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificate and in this Agreement.

3.4 ADJUSTMENTS.

(a) In case the Company shall at any time subdivide its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a greater number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such subdivision shall be proportionately reduced and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately increased. Conversely, in case the outstanding shares of Common Stock of the Company shall be combined into a smaller number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect

4

immediately prior to such combination shall be proportionately increased and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately decreased.

(b) If at any time or from time to time the holders of Common Stock (or any shares of stock or other securities at the time receivable upon the exercise of the Warrants) shall have received or become entitled to receive, without payment therefore:

(i) Common Stock or any shares of stock or other securities which are at any time directly or indirectly convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, or any rights or options to subscribe for, purchase or otherwise acquire any of the foregoing by way of dividend or other distribution;

(ii) any cash paid or payable otherwise than as a cash dividend paid or payable out of the Company's current or retained earnings;

(iii) any evidence of the Company's indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase the Company's indebtedness; or

(iv) Common Stock or additional stock or other securities or property (including cash) by way of spinoff, split-up, reclassification, combination of shares or similar corporate rearrangement (other than shares of Common Stock issued as a stock split or adjustments in respect of which shall be covered by the terms of Section 3.4(a) above), then and in each such case, the holder of each Warrant shall, upon the exercise of the Warrant, be entitled to receive, in addition to the number of Warrant Securities receivable thereupon, and without payment of any additional consideration therefore, the amount of stock and other securities and property (including cash and indebtedness (or rights to subscribe for or purchase indebtedness)) which such holder would hold on the date of such exercise had such holder been the holder of record of such Warrant Securities as of the date on which holders of Common Stock received or became entitled to receive such shares or all other additional stock and other securities and property.

(c) In case of (i) any reclassification, capital reorganization, or change in the Common Stock of the Company (other than as a result of a subdivision, combination, or stock dividend provided for in Section 3.4(a) or Section 3.4(b) above), (ii) share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation and which does not result in any change in the Common Stock other than the issuance of additional shares of Common Stock) or (iii) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a **"Reorganization Event"**), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company or its successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that the holders of the Warrants shall have the right at any time prior to the expiration of the Warrants to purchase, at a total price equal to that payable upon the exercise of the Warrants, the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property receivable in connection with such Reorganization Event by a holder of the same number of Warrant Securities as were purchasable by the holders of the Warrants immediately prior to such Reorganization Event. In any such case appropriate provisions shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the holders of the Warrants so that the provisions hereof shall thereafter be applicable with respect to any shares of stock or other securities and property deliverable upon exercise the Warrants, and appropriate adjustments shall be made to the Warrant Price payable hereunder provided the aggregate purchase price shall remain the same. In the case of any transaction described in clauses (ii) and (iii) above, the Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at

5

any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

(d) The Company may, at its option, at any time until the Expiration Date, reduce the then current Warrant Price to any amount deemed appropriate by the Board of Directors of the Company for any period not exceeding 20 consecutive days (as evidenced in a resolution adopted by such Board of Directors), but only upon giving the notices required by Section 3.5 at least ten days prior to taking such action.

(e) Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, no adjustment in the Warrant Price shall be made by reason of the issuance of shares of Common Stock, or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock, or securities carrying the right to purchase any of the foregoing or for any other reason whatsoever.

(f) No fractional Warrant Securities shall be issued upon the exercise of Warrants. If more than one Warrant shall be exercised at one time by the same holder, the number of full Warrant Securities which shall be issuable upon such exercise shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate number of Warrant Securities purchased pursuant to the Warrants so exercised. Instead of any fractional Warrant Security which would otherwise be issuable upon exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction in an amount equal to the same fraction of the last reported sale price (or bid price if there were no sales) per Warrant Security, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Warrant Securities are listed or admitted to trading on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise or, if the Warrant Securities are not then listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board Service (the “**OTC Bulletin Board**”) operated by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (“**FINRA**”) or, if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system on such date, or if on any such date the Warrant Securities are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, an amount equal to the same fraction of the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose at the close of business on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise.

(g) Whenever the Warrant Price then in effect is adjusted as herein provided, the Company shall mail to each holder of the Warrants at such holder’s address as it shall appear on the books of the Company a statement setting forth the adjusted Warrant Price then and thereafter effective under the provisions hereof, together with the facts, in reasonable detail, upon which such adjustment is based.

3.5 NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS. In case the Company shall (a) effect any dividend or distribution described in Section 3.4(b), (b) effect any Reorganization Event, (c) make any distribution on

6

or in respect of the Common Stock in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, or (d) reduce the then current Warrant Price pursuant to Section 3.4(d), then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder’s address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the record date for such dividend or distribution, or, if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of record of Common Stock that will be entitled to such dividend or distribution are to be determined, (y) the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of Common Stock for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up, or (z) the first date on which the then current Warrant Price shall be reduced pursuant to Section 3.4(d). No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction or any adjustment in the Warrant Price required by Section 3.4.

3.6 [If the Warrants are subject to acceleration by the Company, insert—ACCELERATION OF WARRANTS BY THE COMPANY.] At any time on or after _____, the Company shall have the right to accelerate any or all Warrants at any time by causing them to expire at the close of business on the day next preceding a specified date (the “**Acceleration Date**”), if the Market Price (as hereinafter defined) of the Common Stock equals or exceeds _____ % of the then effective Warrant Price on any 20 Trading Days (as hereinafter defined) within a period of 30 consecutive Trading Days ending no more than five Trading Days prior to the date on which the Company gives notice to the Warrant Agent of its election to accelerate the Warrants.

(a) “**Market Price**” for each Trading Day shall be, if the Common Stock is listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the last reported sale price, regular way (or, if no such price is reported, the average of the reported closing bid and asked prices, regular way) of Common Stock, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Common Stock is listed or admitted to trading or, if not listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board operated by FINRA, or if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, or if on any such date the shares of Common Stock are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose. “**Trading Day**” shall be each Monday through Friday, other than any day on which securities are not traded in the system or on the exchange that is the principal market for the Common Stock, as determined by the Board of Directors of the Company.

(b) In the event of an acceleration of less than all of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall select the Warrants to be accelerated by lot, pro rata or in such other manner as it deems, in its discretion, to be fair and appropriate.

(c) Notice of an acceleration specifying the Acceleration Date shall be sent by mail first class, postage prepaid, to each registered holder of a Warrant Certificate representing a Warrant accelerated at such holder’s address appearing on the books of the Warrant Agent not more than 60 days nor less than 30 days before the Acceleration Date. Such notice of an acceleration also shall be given no more than 20 days, and no less than ten days, prior to the mailing of notice to registered holders of Warrants pursuant to this Section 3.6, by publication at least once in a newspaper of general circulation in the City of New York.

7

(d) Any Warrant accelerated may be exercised until [_____] p.m., [City] time, on the business day next preceding the Acceleration Date. The Warrant Price shall be payable as provided in Section 2.]

ARTICLE 4 EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

4.1 EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable - Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date, upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates

evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and,

8

except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof. The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5 CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 WARRANT AGENT. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further power and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and provisions with respect to such power and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT'S OBLIGATIONS. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) Compensation and Indemnification. The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) Agent for the Company. In acting under this Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) Counsel. The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) Documents. The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) Certain Transactions. The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depository, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Securities

9

or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as trustee under any indenture to which the Company is a party.

(f) **No Liability for Interest.** Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) **No Liability for Invalidity.** The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

(h) **No Responsibility for Representations.** The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) **No Implied Obligations.** The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary

case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation, winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

ARTICLE 6 MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 **AMENDMENT.** This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 ADDRESSES. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____

and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Sunshine Heart, Inc., 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, MN 55344 Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 GOVERNING LAW. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), relating to the Warrant Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "**Prospectus**"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus. The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Securities under the Securities Act), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 HEADINGS. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 COUNTERPARTS. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit such holder's Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

EXHIBIT A

FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[Face of Warrant Certificate]

[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.

Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.

Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT
AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [CITY] TIME, ON _____,
SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
COMMON STOCK, PAR VALUE \$0.0001 PER SHARE

No.

Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable -, subject to the registered owner qualifying as a "Holder" of this Warrant Certificate, as hereinafter defined),] to purchase, at any time [after [] p.m., [City] time, on _____ and] on or before [] p.m., [City] time, on _____, _____ shares of Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. (the "**Company**") on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, the exercise price per Warrant Security will be \$ _____, subject to adjustment as provided in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined) (the "**Warrant Price**"). The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the "**Warrant Agent**"), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term "**Holder**" as used herein shall mean [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - prior to _____, (the "**Detachable Date**"), the registered owner of the Company's [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant

Exhibit A - 1

Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____ (the "**Warrant Agreement**"), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the "**Other Securities**") to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable — Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner's assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone - After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities.

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities (except to the extent set forth in the Warrant Agreement) or to exercise any voting rights.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____ **SUNSHINE HEART, INC.**

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrants)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase _____ shares of the Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. and represents that the undersigned has tendered payment for such Warrant Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Sunshine Heart, Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$ _____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said Warrant Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all of the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated: _____

Name: _____
(Please Print)

Address: _____

Signature Guaranteed

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a bank, trust company or member broker of the New York, Midwest or Pacific Stock Exchange)

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised — complete as appropriate.]

Exhibit A - 5

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if
Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

(Please insert Social Security or other identifying number)

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase _____ shares of [Title of Warrant Securities] of Sunshine Heart, Inc. to which the within Warrant relates and appoints _____ attorney to transfer such right on the books of the Warrant Agent with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

Exhibit A - 6

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

and

, as Warrant Agent

FORM OF PREFERRED STOCK
WARRANT AGREEMENT

Dated as of

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1		1
1.1	ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS	1
1.2	EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	1
1.3	ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	2
ARTICLE 2		2
2.1	WARRANT PRICE	2
2.2	DURATION OF WARRANTS	2
2.3	EXERCISE OF WARRANTS	3
ARTICLE 3		4
3.1	NO RIGHTS AS WARRANT SECURITYHOLDER CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.2	LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.3	HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS	4
3.4	ADJUSTMENTS	4
3.5	NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS	7
3.6	[If the Warrants are subject to acceleration by the Company, insert—ACCELERATION OF WARRANTS BY THE COMPANY]	7
ARTICLE 4		8
4.1	EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	8
4.2	TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	8
4.3	CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	9
ARTICLE 5		9
5.1	WARRANT AGENT	9
5.2	CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT'S OBLIGATIONS	9
5.3	RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS	10
ARTICLE 6		12
6.1	AMENDMENT	12
6.2	NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT	12
6.3	ADDRESSES	12
6.4	GOVERNING LAW	12
6.5	DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS	12
6.6	OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS	12
6.7	PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT	12
6.8	HEADINGS	12
6.9	COUNTERPARTS	13
6.10	INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT	13

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

FORM OF PREFERRED STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT

This PREFERRED STOCK WARRANT AGREEMENT (this "**Agreement**"), dated as of _____ between SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), and _____, a [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the "**Warrant Agent**").

BACKGROUND

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [if Warrants are sold with other securities - [title of such other securities being offered] (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (collectively, the “*Warrants*” and each, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (the “*Warrant Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*”; and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS. [If Warrants alone - Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrants shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after (the “*Detachable Date*”)] [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence Warrants for each [\$ principal amount] [shares] of Other Securities included in such unit.]

1.2 EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in EXHIBIT A hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or

1

to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2 WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 WARRANT PRICE. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof to purchase the number of Warrant Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of \$[] per Warrant Security, subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events, as hereinafter provided. Such purchase price per Warrant Security is referred to in this Agreement as the “*Warrant Price*.”

2.2 DURATION OF WARRANTS. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [] and at or before [] p.m., [City] time, or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the “*Expiration Date*”). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [] p.m., [City] time, on the Expiration

Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 EXERCISE OF WARRANTS.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for the Warrant Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining Warrant Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant the Warrant Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Security until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company's satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

ARTICLE 3 OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

3.1 NO RIGHTS AS WARRANT SECURITYHOLDER CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities or to exercise any voting rights, except to the extent expressly set forth in this Agreement or the applicable Warrant Certificate.

3.2 LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like number of Warrant Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of a Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the holder of any Warrant Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, on such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the

Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificate and in this Agreement.

3.4 ADJUSTMENTS.

(a) In case the Company shall at any time subdivide its outstanding shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] into a greater number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such subdivision shall be proportionately reduced and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately increased. Conversely, in case the outstanding shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] of the

4

Company shall be combined into a smaller number of shares, the Warrant Price in effect immediately prior to such combination shall be proportionately increased and the number of Warrant Securities purchasable under the Warrants shall be proportionately decreased.

(b) If at any time or from time to time the holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (or any shares of stock or other securities at the time receivable upon the exercise of the Warrants) shall have received or become entitled to receive, without payment therefore:

(i) [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or any shares of stock or other securities which are at any time directly or indirectly convertible into or exchangeable for [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants], or any rights or options to subscribe for, purchase or otherwise acquire any of the foregoing by way of dividend or other distribution;

(ii) any cash paid or payable otherwise than in accordance with the terms of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or otherwise than as a cash dividend paid or payable out of the Company's current or retained earnings;

(iii) any evidence of the Company's indebtedness or rights to subscribe for or purchase the Company's indebtedness; or

(iv) [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] or additional stock or other securities or property (including cash) by way of spinoff, split-up, reclassification, combination of shares or similar corporate rearrangement (other than shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] issued as a stock split or adjustments in respect of which shall be covered by the terms of Section 3.4(a) above), then and in each such case, the holder of each Warrant shall, upon the exercise of the Warrant, be entitled to receive, in addition to the number of Warrant Securities receivable thereupon, and without payment of any additional consideration therefore, the amount of stock and other securities and property (including cash and indebtedness (or rights to subscribe for or purchase indebtedness)) which such holder would hold on the date of such exercise had such holder been the holder of record of such Warrant Securities as of the date on which holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] received or became entitled to receive such shares or all other additional stock and other securities and property.

(c) In case of (i) any reclassification, capital reorganization, or change in the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] of the Company (other than as a result of a subdivision, combination, or stock dividend provided for in Section 3.4(a) or Section 3.4(b) above), (ii) share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation and which does not result in any change in the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] other than the issuance of additional shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants]) or (iii) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a "Reorganization Event"), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company or its successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that the holders of the Warrants shall have the right at any time prior to the expiration of the Warrants to purchase, at a total price equal to that payable upon the exercise of the Warrants, the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property receivable in connection with such Reorganization Event by a holder of the same number of shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] as were purchasable by the holders of

5

the Warrants immediately prior to such Reorganization Event. In any such case appropriate provisions shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of the holders of the Warrants so that the provisions hereof shall thereafter be applicable with respect to any shares of stock or other securities and property deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants, and appropriate adjustments shall be made to the Warrant Price payable hereunder provided the aggregate purchase price shall remain the same. In the case of any transaction described in clauses (ii) and (iii) above, the Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

(d) The Company may, at its option, at any time until the Expiration Date, reduce the then current Warrant Price to any amount deemed appropriate by the Board of Directors of the Company for any period not exceeding 20 consecutive days (as evidenced in a resolution adopted by such Board of Directors), but only upon giving the notices required by Section 3.5 at least ten days prior to taking such action.

(e) Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, no adjustment in the Warrant Price shall be made by reason of the issuance of any securities of the Company or for any other reason whatsoever.

(f) No fractional Warrant Securities shall be issued upon the exercise of Warrants. If more than one Warrant shall be exercised at one time by the same holder, the number of full Warrant Securities which shall be issuable upon such exercise shall be computed on the basis of the aggregate number of Warrant Securities purchased pursuant to the Warrants so exercised. Instead of any fractional Warrant Security which would otherwise be issuable upon exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall pay a cash adjustment in respect of such fraction in an amount equal to the same fraction of the last reported sale price (or bid price if there were no sales) per Warrant Security, in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the Warrant Securities are listed or admitted to trading on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise or, if the Warrant Securities are not then listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board Service (the “*OTC Bulletin Board*”) operated by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (“*FINRA*”) or, if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system on such date, or if on any such date the Warrant Securities are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, an amount equal to the same fraction of the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose at the close of business on the business day that next precedes the day of exercise.

(g) Whenever the Warrant Price then in effect is adjusted as herein provided, the Company shall mail to each holder of the Warrants at such holder’s address as it shall appear on the

6

books of the Company a statement setting forth the adjusted Warrant Price then and thereafter effective under the provisions hereof, together with the facts, in reasonable detail, upon which such adjustment is based.

3.5 NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS. In case the Company shall (a) effect any dividend or distribution described in Section 3.4(b), (b) effect any Reorganization Event, (c) make any distribution on or in respect of the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, or (d) reduce the then current Warrant Price pursuant to Section 3.4(d), then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder’s address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the record date for such dividend or distribution, or, if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of record of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] that will be entitled to such dividend or distribution are to be determined, (y) the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up, or (z) the first date on which the then current Warrant Price shall be reduced pursuant to Section 3.4(d). No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction or any adjustment in the Warrant Price required by Section 3.4.

3.6 [If the Warrants are subject to acceleration by the Company, insert—ACCELERATION OF WARRANTS BY THE COMPANY.]
At any time on or after _____, the Company shall have the right to accelerate any or all Warrants at any time by causing them to expire at the close of business on the day next preceding a specified date (the “*Acceleration Date*”), if the Market Price (as hereinafter defined) of the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] equals or exceeds _____ % of the then effective Warrant Price on any 20 Trading Days (as hereinafter defined) within a period of 30 consecutive Trading Days ending no more than five Trading Days prior to the date on which the Company gives notice to the Warrant Agent of its election to accelerate the Warrants.

(a) “*Market Price*” for each Trading Day shall be, if the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] is listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the last reported sale price, regular way (or, if no such price is reported, the average of the reported closing bid and asked prices, regular way) of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants], in either case as reported on the principal registered national securities exchange on which the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] is listed or admitted to trading or, if not listed or admitted to trading on any registered national securities exchange, the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on the OTC Bulletin Board operated by FINRA, or if not available on the OTC Bulletin Board, then the average of the closing high bid and low asked prices as reported on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, or if on any such date the shares of [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants] are not listed or admitted to trading on a registered national securities exchange, are not included in the OTC Bulletin Board, and are not quoted on any other U.S. quotation medium or inter-dealer quotation system, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any FINRA member firm selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose. “*Trading Day*” shall be each Monday through Friday, other than any day on which securities are not traded in the system or on the exchange that is the principal market for the [title of Preferred Stock purchasable through exercise of Warrants], as determined by the Board of Directors of the Company.

7

(b) In the event of an acceleration of less than all of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall select the Warrants to be accelerated by lot, pro rata or in such other manner as it deems, in its discretion, to be fair and appropriate.

(c) Notice of an acceleration specifying the Acceleration Date shall be sent by mail first class, postage prepaid, to each registered holder of a Warrant Certificate representing a Warrant accelerated at such holder’s address appearing on the books of the Warrant Agent not more than 60 days nor less than 30 days before the Acceleration Date. Such notice of an acceleration also shall be given no more than 20 days, and no less than ten days, prior to the mailing of notice to registered holders of Warrants pursuant to this Section 3.6, by publication at least once in a newspaper of general circulation in the City of New York.

(d) Any Warrant accelerated may be exercised until [_____] p.m., [City] time, on the business day next preceding the Acceleration Date. The Warrant Price shall be payable as provided in Section 2.]

4.1 EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable - Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date, upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent

8

and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and, except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof. The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5 CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 WARRANT AGENT. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further power and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and provisions with respect to such power and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT'S OBLIGATIONS. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) Compensation and Indemnification. The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) Agent for the Company. In acting under this Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) Counsel. The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete

9

authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) Documents. The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) **Certain Transactions.** The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depository, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Securities or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as trustee under any indenture to which the Company is a party.

(f) **No Liability for Interest.** Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) **No Liability for Invalidity.** The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

(h) **No Responsibility for Representations.** The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) **No Implied Obligations.** The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

10

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation, winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

11

MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 AMENDMENT. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 ADDRESSES. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____ and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Sunshine Heart, Inc., 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, MN 55344 Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 GOVERNING LAW. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), relating to the Warrant Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "Prospectus"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus. The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Securities under the Securities Act), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 HEADINGS. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 COUNTERPARTS. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit such holder's Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

EXHIBIT A

FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[Face of Warrant Certificate]

[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.

Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.

Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT
AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [CITY] TIME, ON _____,

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
[TITLE OF WARRANT SECURITIES]

No.

Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable -, subject to the registered owner qualifying as a "Holder" of this Warrant Certificate, as hereinafter defined),] to purchase, at any time [after [] p.m., [City] time, on _____ and] on or before [] p.m., [City] time, on _____, _____ shares of [title of Warrant Securities] (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. (the "**Company**") on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, the exercise price per Warrant Security will be \$ _____, subject to adjustment as provided in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined) (the "**Warrant Price**"). The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the "**Warrant Agent**"), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term "**Holder**" as used herein shall mean [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - prior to _____, (the "**Detachable Date**"), the registered owner of the Company's [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

Exhibit A - 1

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Securities in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____ (the "**Warrant Agreement**"), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the "**Other Securities**") to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable — Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner's assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone - After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate number of Warrant Securities.

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of dividends or distributions, if any, on the Warrant Securities (except to the extent set forth in the Warrant Agreement) or to exercise any voting rights.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose until countersigned by the Warrant Agent.

Exhibit A - 2

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

Exhibit A - 3

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrants)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase _____ shares of the [title of Warrant Securities] (the "**Warrant Securities**"), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. and represents that the undersigned has tendered payment for such Warrant Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Sunshine Heart, Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$ _____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said Warrant Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all of the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated: _____

Name: _____
(Please Print)

Address: _____

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature Guaranteed

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a bank, trust company or member broker of the New York, Midwest or Pacific Stock Exchange)

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Securities remaining unexercised — complete as appropriate.]

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if
Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

(Please insert Social Security or other identifying number)

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase shares of [Title of Warrant Securities] of Sunshine Heart, Inc. to which the within Warrant relates and appoints attorney to transfer such right on the books of the Warrant Agent with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

and

, as Warrant Agent

FORM OF DEBT SECURITIES
WARRANT AGREEMENT

Dated as of

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1		1
1.1	ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS	1
1.2	EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	2
1.3	ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	2
ARTICLE 2		2
2.1	WARRANT PRICE	2
2.2	DURATION OF WARRANTS	3
2.3	EXERCISE OF WARRANTS	3
ARTICLE 3		4
3.1	NO RIGHTS AS HOLDERS OF WARRANT DEBT SECURITIES CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.2	LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES	4
3.3	HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS	5
3.4	MERGER, SALE, CONVEYANCE OR LEASE	5
3.5	NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS	5
ARTICLE 4		5
4.1	EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	5
4.2	TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	6
4.3	CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES	6
ARTICLE 5		6
5.1	WARRANT AGENT	6
5.2	CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT'S OBLIGATIONS	7
5.3	RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS	8
ARTICLE 6		9
6.1	AMENDMENT	9
6.2	NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT	9
6.3	ADDRESSES	9
6.4	GOVERNING LAW	9
6.5	DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS	9
6.6	OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS	10
6.7	PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT	10
6.8	HEADINGS	10
6.9	COUNTERPARTS	10
6.10	INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT	10

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

FORM OF DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT

This DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT (this "*Agreement*"), dated as of _____ between SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the "*Company*"), and _____, a _____ [corporation] [national banking association] organized and existing under the laws of _____ and having a corporate trust office in _____, as warrant agent (the "*Warrant Agent*").

BACKGROUND

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into an indenture dated as of [] (the “*Senior Indenture*”), with [], as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, herein called the “*Senior Trustee*”), providing for the issuance from time to time of its unsubordinated debt securities, to be issued in one or more series as provided in the Senior Indenture (the “*Debt Securities*”); [] (the “*Subordinated Indenture*”), with [], as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, herein called the “*Subordinated Trustee*”), providing for the issuance from time to time of its subordinated debt securities, to be issued in one or more series as provided in the Subordinated Indenture (the “*Debt Securities*”);

WHEREAS, the Company proposes to sell [if Warrants are sold with other securities - [title of such other securities being offered] (the “*Other Securities*”) with] warrant certificates evidencing one or more warrants (collectively, the “*Warrants*” and each, a “*Warrant*”) representing the right to purchase [title of Debt Securities purchasable through exercise of Warrants] (the “*Warrant Debt Securities*”), such warrant certificates and other warrant certificates issued pursuant to this Agreement being herein called the “*Warrant Certificates*”; and

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing so to act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, exercise and replacement of the Warrant Certificates, and in this Agreement wishes to set forth, among other things, the form and provisions of the Warrant Certificates and the terms and conditions on which they may be issued, registered, transferred, exchanged, exercised and replaced.

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS AND EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

1.1 ISSUANCE OF WARRANTS. [If Warrants alone - Upon issuance, each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] [If Other Securities and Warrants — Warrant Certificates shall be [initially] issued in connection with the issuance of the Other Securities [but shall be separately transferable on and after [] (the “*Detachable Date*”) [and shall not be separately transferable] and each Warrant Certificate shall evidence one or more Warrants.] Each Warrant evidenced thereby shall represent the right, subject to the provisions contained herein and therein, to purchase one Warrant Debt Security. [If Other Securities and Warrants - Warrant Certificates shall be initially issued in units with the Other Securities and each Warrant Certificate included in such a unit shall evidence [] Warrants for each [\$] principal amount] [] shares] of Other Securities included in such unit.]

1

1.2 EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Each Warrant Certificate, whenever issued, shall be in registered form substantially in the form set forth in EXHIBIT A hereto, shall be dated the date of its countersignature by the Warrant Agent and may have such letters, numbers, or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the officers of the Company executing the same may approve (execution thereof to be conclusive evidence of such approval) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which the Warrants may be listed, or to conform to usage. The Warrant Certificates shall be signed on behalf of the Company by any of its present or future chief executive officers, presidents, senior vice presidents, vice presidents, chief financial officers, chief legal officers, treasurers, assistant treasurers, controllers, assistant controllers, secretaries or assistant secretaries under its corporate seal reproduced thereon. Such signatures may be manual or facsimile signatures of such authorized officers and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile thereof and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Warrant Certificates.

No Warrant Certificate shall be valid for any purpose, and no Warrant evidenced thereby shall be exercisable, until such Warrant Certificate has been countersigned by the manual signature of the Warrant Agent. Such signature by the Warrant Agent upon any Warrant Certificate executed by the Company shall be conclusive evidence that the Warrant Certificate so countersigned has been duly issued hereunder.

In case any officer of the Company who shall have signed any of the Warrant Certificates either manually or by facsimile signature shall cease to be such officer before the Warrant Certificates so signed shall have been countersigned and delivered by the Warrant Agent, such Warrant Certificates may be countersigned and delivered notwithstanding that the person who signed Warrant Certificates ceased to be such officer of the Company; and any Warrant Certificate may be signed on behalf of the Company by such persons as, at the actual date of the execution of such Warrant Certificate, shall be the proper officers of the Company, although at the date of the execution of this Agreement any such person was not such officer.

The term “holder” or “holder of a Warrant Certificate” as used herein shall mean any person in whose name at the time any Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - or upon the registration of the Other Securities prior to the Detachable Date. Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company will, or will cause the registrar of the Other Securities to, make available at all times to the Warrant Agent such information as to holders of the Other Securities as may be necessary to keep the Warrant Agent’s records up to date].

1.3 ISSUANCE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Warrant Certificates evidencing the right to purchase Warrant Debt Securities may be executed by the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent upon the execution of this Agreement or from time to time thereafter. The Warrant Agent shall, upon receipt of Warrant Certificates duly executed on behalf of the Company, countersign such Warrant Certificates and shall deliver such Warrant Certificates to or upon the order of the Company.

ARTICLE 2 WARRANT PRICE, DURATION AND EXERCISE OF WARRANTS

2.1 WARRANT PRICE. During the period specified in Section 2.2, each Warrant shall, subject to the terms of this Agreement and the applicable Warrant Certificate, entitle the holder thereof to purchase the principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities specified in the applicable Warrant Certificate at an exercise price of [] % of the principal amount thereof [plus accrued amortization, if any, of the

2

original issue discount of the Warrant Debt Securities] [plus accrued interest, if any, from the most recent date from which interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities or, if no interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities, from the date of their initial issuance.] [The original issue discount (\$ _____ for each \$1,000 principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities) will be amortized at a _____ % annual rate, computed on a[n] [semi-]annual basis [using a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months].] Such purchase price for the Warrant Debt Securities is referred to in this Agreement as the “**Warrant Price.**”

2.2 DURATION OF WARRANTS. Each Warrant may be exercised in whole or in part at any time, as specified herein, on or after [the date thereof] [_____] and at or before [_____] p.m., [City] time, or such later date as the Company may designate by notice to the Warrant Agent and the holders of Warrant Certificates mailed to their addresses as set forth in the record books of the Warrant Agent (the “**Expiration Date**”). Each Warrant not exercised at or before [_____] p.m., [City] time, on the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant under this Agreement shall cease.

2.3 EXERCISE OF WARRANTS.

(a) During the period specified in Section 2.2, the Warrants may be exercised to purchase a whole number of Warrant Debt Securities in registered form by providing certain information as set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds] the Warrant Price for each Warrant Debt Security with respect to which a Warrant is being exercised to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office, provided that such exercise is subject to receipt within five business days of such payment by the Warrant Agent of the Warrant Certificate with the form of election to purchase Warrant Debt Securities set forth on the reverse side of the Warrant Certificate properly completed and duly executed. The date on which payment in full of the Warrant Price is received by the Warrant Agent shall, subject to receipt of the Warrant Certificate as aforesaid, be deemed to be the date on which the Warrant is exercised; provided, however, that if, at the date of receipt of such Warrant Certificates and payment in full of the Warrant Price, the transfer books for the Warrant Debt Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be closed, no such receipt of such Warrant Certificates and no such payment of such Warrant Price shall be effective to constitute the person so designated to be named as the holder of record of such Warrant Debt Securities on such date, but shall be effective to constitute such person as the holder of record of such Warrant Debt Securities for all purposes at the opening of business on the next succeeding day on which the transfer books for the Warrant Debt Securities purchasable upon the exercise of such Warrants shall be opened, and the certificates for the Warrant Debt Securities in respect of which such Warrants are then exercised shall be issuable as of the date on such next succeeding day on which the transfer books shall next be opened, and until such date the Company shall be under no duty to deliver any certificate for such Warrant Debt Securities. The Warrant Agent shall deposit all funds received by it in payment of the Warrant Price in an account of the Company maintained with it and shall advise the Company by telephone at the end of each day on which a payment for the exercise of Warrants is received of the amount so deposited to its account. The Warrant Agent shall promptly confirm such telephone advice to the Company in writing.

(b) The Warrant Agent shall, from time to time, as promptly as practicable, advise the Company of (i) the number of Warrant Debt Securities with respect to which Warrants were exercised, (ii) the instructions of each holder of the Warrant Certificates evidencing such Warrants with respect to delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities to which such holder is entitled upon such exercise, (iii) delivery of Warrant Certificates evidencing the balance, if any, of the Warrants for the remaining

Warrant Debt Securities after such exercise, and (iv) such other information as the Company or the [Senior] [Subordinated] Trustee shall reasonably require.

(c) As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant, the Company shall issue, pursuant to the Indenture, in authorized denominations, to or upon the order of the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant the Warrant Debt Securities to which such holder is entitled, in fully registered form, registered in such name or names as may be directed by such holder. If fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificate are exercised, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised.

(d) The Company shall not be required to pay any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge required to be paid in connection with any transfer involved in the issue of the Warrant Debt Securities, and in the event that any such transfer is involved, the Company shall not be required to issue or deliver any Warrant Debt Securities until such tax or other charge shall have been paid or it has been established to the Company’s satisfaction that no such tax or other charge is due.

(e) Prior to the issuance of any Warrants there shall have been reserved, and the Company shall at all times through the Expiration Date keep reserved, out of its authorized but unissued Warrant Debt Securities, a number of shares sufficient to provide for the exercise of the Warrants.

**ARTICLE 3
OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO RIGHTS
OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES**

3.1 NO RIGHTS AS HOLDERS OF WARRANT DEBT SECURITIES CONFERRED BY WARRANTS OR WARRANT CERTIFICATES. No Warrant Certificate or Warrant evidenced thereby shall entitle the holder thereof to any of the rights of a holder of Warrant Debt Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Warrant Debt Securities or to enforce any of the covenants in the Indenture.

3.2 LOST, STOLEN, MUTILATED OR DESTROYED WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Upon receipt by the Warrant Agent of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it and the Company of the ownership of and the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of any Warrant Certificate and/or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Warrant Agent and the Company and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender of the mutilated Warrant Certificate to the Warrant Agent for cancellation, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Warrant Agent that such Warrant Certificate has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute, and an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of the lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated Warrant Certificate, a new Warrant Certificate of the same tenor and evidencing Warrants for a like principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities. Upon the issuance of any new Warrant Certificate under this Section 3.2, the Company may require the payment of a sum

sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Warrant Agent) in connection therewith. Every substitute Warrant Certificate executed and delivered pursuant to this Section 3.2 in lieu of any lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall represent an additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificate shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to the benefits of this Agreement equally and proportionately with any and all other Warrant Certificates duly executed and delivered hereunder. The provisions of this Section 3.2 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement of mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Warrant Certificates.

3.3 HOLDER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE MAY ENFORCE RIGHTS. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of this Agreement, any holder of any Warrant Certificate, without the consent of the Warrant Agent, the [Senior] [Subordinated] Trustee, the holder of any Warrant Debt Securities or the holder of any other Warrant Certificate, may, on such holder's own behalf and for such holder's own benefit, enforce, and may institute and maintain any suit, action or proceeding against the Company suitable to enforce, or otherwise in respect of, such holder's right to exercise the Warrants evidenced by such holder's Warrant Certificate in the manner provided in such holder's Warrant Certificate and in this Agreement.

3.4 MERGER, SALE, CONVEYANCE OR LEASE. In case of (a) any share exchange, merger or similar transaction of the Company with or into another person or entity (other than a share exchange, merger or similar transaction in which the Company is the acquiring or surviving corporation) or (b) the sale, exchange, lease, transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company as an entirety (in any such case, a "**Reorganization Event**"), then, as a condition of such Reorganization Event, lawful provisions shall be made, and duly executed documents evidencing the same from the Company's successor shall be delivered to the holders of the Warrants, so that such successor shall succeed to, and be substituted for the Company, and assume all the Company's obligations under, this Agreement and the Warrants. The Company shall thereupon be relieved of any further obligation hereunder or under the Warrants, and the Company as the predecessor corporation may thereupon or at any time thereafter be dissolved, wound up or liquidated. Such successor or assuming entity thereupon may cause to be signed, and may issue either in its own name or in the name of the Company, any or all of the Warrants issuable hereunder which heretofore shall not have been signed by the Company, and may execute and deliver securities in its own name, in fulfillment of its obligations to deliver Warrant Debt Securities upon exercise of the Warrants. All the Warrants so issued shall in all respects have the same legal rank and benefit under this Agreement as the Warrants theretofore or thereafter issued in accordance with the terms of this Agreement as though all of such Warrants had been issued at the date of the execution hereof. In any case of any such Reorganization Event, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Warrants thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate. The Warrant Agent may receive a written opinion of legal counsel as conclusive evidence that any such Reorganization Event complies with the provisions of this Section 3.4.

3.5 NOTICE TO WARRANTHOLDERS. In case the Company shall (a) effect any Reorganization Event or (b) make any distribution on or in respect of the [title of Warrant Debt Securities] in connection with the dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Company, then the Company shall mail to each holder of Warrants at such holder's address as it shall appear on the books of the Warrant Agent, at least ten days prior to the applicable date hereinafter specified, a notice stating the date on which such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up is expected to become effective, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of [title of Warrant Debt Securities] of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of [title of Warrant Debt Securities] for securities or other property deliverable upon such Reorganization Event, dissolution, liquidation or winding up. No failure to mail such notice nor any defect therein or in the mailing thereof shall affect any such transaction.

ARTICLE 4 EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES

4.1 EXCHANGE AND TRANSFER OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable - Upon] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, a Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the Other Security to which the Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Prior to any Detachable Date, each transfer of the Other Security shall operate also to transfer

the related Warrant Certificates. After the Detachable Date, upon] surrender at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants may be exchanged for Warrant Certificates in other denominations evidencing such Warrants or the transfer thereof may be registered in whole or in part; provided that such other Warrant Certificates evidence Warrants for the same aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities as the Warrant Certificates so surrendered. The Warrant Agent shall keep, at its corporate trust office, books in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, it shall register Warrant Certificates and exchanges and transfers of outstanding Warrant Certificates, upon surrender of the Warrant Certificates to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust office for exchange or registration of transfer, properly endorsed or accompanied by appropriate instruments of registration of transfer and written instructions for transfer, all in form satisfactory to the Company and the Warrant Agent. No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp or other tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any such exchange or registration of transfer. Whenever any Warrant Certificates are so surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, an authorized officer of the Warrant Agent shall manually countersign and deliver to the person or persons entitled thereto a Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates duly authorized and executed by the Company, as so requested. The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any exchange or registration of transfer which will result in the issuance of a Warrant Certificate evidencing a Warrant for a fraction of a Warrant Debt Security or a number of Warrants for a whole number of Warrant Debt Securities and a fraction of a Warrant Debt Security. All Warrant Certificates issued upon any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrant Certificates shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same obligations and entitled to the same benefits under this Agreement as the Warrant Certificate surrendered for such exchange or registration of transfer.

4.2 TREATMENT OF HOLDERS OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. [If Other Securities and Warrants are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, the Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the owner of the Other Security as the owner of the Warrant Certificates initially attached thereto for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced by such Warrant Certificates, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding. After the Detachable Date and prior to due presentment of a Warrant Certificate for registration of transfer, the] [The] Company, the Warrant Agent and all other persons may treat the registered holder of a Warrant Certificate as the absolute owner thereof for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights represented by the Warrants evidenced thereby, any notice to the contrary notwithstanding.

4.3 CANCELLATION OF WARRANT CERTIFICATES. Any Warrant Certificate surrendered for exchange, registration of transfer or exercise of the Warrants evidenced thereby shall, if surrendered to the Company, be delivered to the Warrant Agent and all Warrant Certificates surrendered or so delivered to the Warrant Agent shall be promptly canceled by the Warrant Agent and shall not be reissued and, except as expressly permitted by this Agreement, no Warrant Certificate shall be issued hereunder in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof. The Warrant Agent shall deliver to the Company from time to time or otherwise dispose of canceled Warrant Certificates in a manner satisfactory to the Company.

ARTICLE 5 CONCERNING THE WARRANT AGENT

5.1 WARRANT AGENT. The Company hereby appoints _____ as Warrant Agent of the Company in respect of the Warrants and the Warrant Certificates upon the terms and subject to the conditions herein set forth, and _____ hereby accepts such appointment. The Warrant Agent shall have the powers and authority granted to and conferred upon it in the Warrant Certificates and hereby and such further power and authority to act on behalf of the Company as the Company may hereafter grant to or confer upon it. All of the terms and provisions with

6

respect to such power and authority contained in the Warrant Certificates are subject to and governed by the terms and provisions hereof.

5.2 CONDITIONS OF WARRANT AGENT'S OBLIGATIONS. The Warrant Agent accepts its obligations herein set forth upon the terms and conditions hereof, including the following to all of which the Company agrees and to all of which the rights hereunder of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates shall be subject:

(a) Compensation and Indemnification. The Company agrees promptly to pay the Warrant Agent the compensation to be agreed upon with the Company for all services rendered by the Warrant Agent and to reimburse the Warrant Agent for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct by the Warrant Agent in connection with the services rendered hereunder by the Warrant Agent. The Company also agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence, bad faith or willful misconduct on the part of the Warrant Agent, arising out of or in connection with its acting as Warrant Agent hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending against any claim of such liability.

(b) Agent for the Company. In acting under this Agreement and in connection with the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent is acting solely as agent of the Company and does not assume any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with any of the holders of Warrant Certificates or beneficial owners of Warrants.

(c) Counsel. The Warrant Agent may consult with counsel satisfactory to it, which may include counsel for the Company, and the written advice of such counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with the advice of such counsel.

(d) Documents. The Warrant Agent shall be protected and shall incur no liability for or in respect of any action taken or omitted by it in reliance upon any Warrant Certificate, notice, direction, consent, certificate, affidavit, statement or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been presented or signed by the proper parties.

(e) Certain Transactions. The Warrant Agent, and its officers, directors and employees, may become the owner of, or acquire any interest in, Warrants, with the same rights that it or they would have if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder, and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, it or they may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company and may act on, or as depository, trustee or agent for, any committee or body of holders of Warrant Debt Securities or other obligations of the Company as freely as if it were not the Warrant Agent hereunder. Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Warrant Agent from acting as [Senior] [Subordinated] Trustee under the [Senior] [Subordinated] Indenture.

(f) No Liability for Interest. Unless otherwise agreed with the Company, the Warrant Agent shall have no liability for interest on any monies at any time received by it pursuant to any of the provisions of this Agreement or of the Warrant Certificates.

(g) No Liability for Invalidity. The Warrant Agent shall have no liability with respect to any invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon).

7

(h) No Responsibility for Representations. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any of the recitals or representations herein or in the Warrant Certificates (except as to the Warrant Agent's countersignature thereon), all of which are made solely by the Company.

(i) No Implied Obligations. The Warrant Agent shall be obligated to perform only such duties as are herein and in the Warrant Certificates specifically set forth and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Agreement or the Warrant Certificates against the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent shall not be under any obligation to take any action hereunder which may tend to involve it in any expense or liability, the payment of which within a reasonable time is not, in its reasonable opinion, assured to it. The Warrant Agent shall not be accountable or under any duty or responsibility for the use by the Company of any of the Warrant Certificates authenticated by the Warrant Agent and delivered by it to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or for the application by the Company of the proceeds of the Warrant Certificates. The Warrant Agent shall have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by the Company in the performance of its covenants or agreements contained herein or in the Warrant Certificates or in the case of the receipt of any written demand from a holder of a Warrant Certificate with respect to such default, including, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any duty or responsibility to initiate or attempt to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise or, except as provided in Section 6.2 hereof, to make any demand upon the Company.

5.3 RESIGNATION, REMOVAL AND APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSORS.

(a) The Company agrees, for the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Warrant Certificates, that there shall at all times be a Warrant Agent hereunder until all the Warrants have been exercised or are no longer exercisable.

(b) The Warrant Agent may at any time resign as agent by giving written notice to the Company of such intention on its part, specifying the date on which its desired resignation shall become effective; provided that such date shall not be less than three months after the date on which such notice is given unless the Company otherwise agrees. The Warrant Agent hereunder may be removed at any time by the filing with it of an instrument in writing signed by or on behalf of the Company and specifying such removal and the intended date when it shall become effective. Such resignation or removal shall take effect upon the appointment by the Company, as hereinafter provided, of a successor Warrant Agent (which shall be a bank or trust company authorized under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization to exercise corporate trust powers) and the acceptance of such appointment by such successor Warrant Agent. The obligation of the Company under Section 5.2(a) shall continue to the extent set forth therein notwithstanding the resignation or removal of the Warrant Agent.

(c) In case at any time the Warrant Agent shall resign, or shall be removed, or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or shall commence a voluntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or under any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law or shall consent to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Warrant Agent or its property or affairs, or shall make an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or shall admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or shall take corporate action in furtherance of any such action, or a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered in respect of the Warrant Agent in an involuntary case under the Federal bankruptcy laws, as now or hereafter constituted, or any other applicable Federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises shall have been entered for the appointment of a receiver, custodian, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Warrant Agent or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation,

8

winding up or liquidation, a successor Warrant Agent, qualified as aforesaid, shall be appointed by the Company by an instrument in writing, filed with the successor Warrant Agent. Upon the appointment as aforesaid of a successor Warrant Agent and acceptance by the successor Warrant Agent of such appointment, the Warrant Agent shall cease to be Warrant Agent hereunder.

(d) Any successor Warrant Agent appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to its predecessor and to the Company an instrument accepting such appointment hereunder, and thereupon such successor Warrant Agent, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the authority, rights, powers, trusts, immunities, duties and obligations of such predecessor with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, and such predecessor, upon payment of its charges and disbursements then unpaid, shall thereupon become obligated to transfer, deliver and pay over, and such successor Warrant Agent shall be entitled to receive, all monies, securities and other property on deposit with or held by such predecessor, as Warrant Agent hereunder.

(e) Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent hereunder may be merged or converted or any corporation with which the Warrant Agent may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party, or any corporation to which the Warrant Agent shall sell or otherwise transfer all or substantially all the assets and business of the Warrant Agent, provided that it shall be qualified as aforesaid, shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto.

ARTICLE 6 MISCELLANEOUS

6.1 AMENDMENT. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto, without the consent of the holder of any Warrant Certificate, for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or of curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein, or making any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem necessary or desirable; provided that such action shall not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the Warrant Certificates.

6.2 NOTICES AND DEMANDS TO THE COMPANY AND WARRANT AGENT. If the Warrant Agent shall receive any notice or demand addressed to the Company by the holder of a Warrant Certificate pursuant to the provisions of the Warrant Certificates, the Warrant Agent shall promptly forward such notice or demand to the Company.

6.3 ADDRESSES. Any communication from the Company to the Warrant Agent with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to _____, Attention: _____ and any communication from the Warrant Agent to the Company with respect to this Agreement shall be addressed to Sunshine Heart, Inc., 12988 Valley View Road, Eden Prairie, Minnesota 55344 Attention: Chief Financial Officer (or such other address as shall be specified in writing by the Warrant Agent or by the Company).

6.4 GOVERNING LAW. This Agreement and each Warrant Certificate issued hereunder shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

6.5 DELIVERY OF PROSPECTUS. The Company shall furnish to the Warrant Agent sufficient copies of a prospectus meeting the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), relating to the Warrant Debt Securities deliverable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "**Prospectus**"), and the Warrant Agent agrees that upon the exercise of any Warrant, the Warrant Agent

9

will deliver to the holder of the Warrant Certificate evidencing such Warrant, prior to or concurrently with the delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities issued upon such exercise, a Prospectus. The Warrant Agent shall not, by reason of any such delivery, assume any responsibility for the accuracy or adequacy of such Prospectus.

6.6 OBTAINING OF GOVERNMENTAL APPROVALS. The Company will from time to time take all action which may be necessary to obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities and securities act filings under United States Federal and state laws (including without limitation a registration statement in respect of the Warrants and Warrant Debt Securities under the Securities Act), which may be or become requisite in connection with the issuance, sale, transfer, and delivery of the Warrant Debt Securities issued upon exercise of the Warrants, the issuance, sale, transfer and delivery of the Warrants or upon the expiration of the period during which the Warrants are exercisable.

6.7 PERSONS HAVING RIGHTS UNDER WARRANT AGREEMENT. Nothing in this Agreement shall give to any person other than the Company, the Warrant Agent and the holders of the Warrant Certificates any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Agreement.

6.8 HEADINGS. The descriptive headings of the several Articles and Sections of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not control or affect the meaning or construction of any of the provisions hereof.

6.9 COUNTERPARTS. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which as so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

6.10 INSPECTION OF AGREEMENT. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for inspection by the holder of any Warrant Certificate. The Warrant Agent may require such holder to submit such holder's Warrant Certificate for inspection by it.

SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE

10

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

SIGNATURE PAGE TO DEBT SECURITIES WARRANT AGREEMENT

EXHIBIT A

**FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE
[Face of Warrant Certificate]**

[Form if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable.

Prior to _____, this Warrant Certificate cannot be transferred or exchanged unless attached to a [Title of Other Securities].]

[Form of Legend if Warrants are not immediately exercisable.

Prior to _____, Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate cannot be exercised.]

EXERCISABLE ONLY IF COUNTERSIGNED BY THE WARRANT
AGENT AS PROVIDED HEREIN

VOID AFTER [] P.M., [CITY] TIME, ON _____,

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

WARRANT CERTIFICATE REPRESENTING
WARRANTS TO PURCHASE
[TITLE OF WARRANT DEBT SECURITIES]

No.

Warrants

This certifies that _____ or registered assigns is the registered owner of the above indicated number of Warrants, each Warrant entitling such owner [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - , subject to the registered owner qualifying as a “Holder” of this Warrant Certificate, as hereinafter defined,] to purchase, at any time [after [] p.m., [City] time, on _____ and] on or before [] p.m., [City] time, on _____, \$ _____ principal amount of [Title of Warrant Debt Securities] (the “**Warrant Debt Securities**”), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. (the “**Company**”), issued or to be issued under the Indenture (as hereinafter defined), on the following basis: during the period from _____, through and including _____, each Warrant shall entitle the Holder thereof, subject to the provisions of this Agreement, to purchase the principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities stated in the Warrant Certificate at the warrant price (the “**Warrant Price**”) of _____ % of the principal amount thereof [plus accrued amortization, if any, of the original issue discount of the Warrant Debt Securities] [plus accrued interest, if any, from the most recent date from which interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities or, if no interest shall have been paid on the Warrant Debt Securities, from the date of their original issuance]. [The original issue discount (\$ _____ for each \$1,000 principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities) will be amortized at a _____ % annual rate, computed on a[n] [semi-]annual basis [using a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months]. The Holder may exercise the Warrants evidenced hereby by providing certain information set forth on the back hereof and by paying in full, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price for each Warrant Debt Security with respect to which this Warrant is exercised to the Warrant Agent (as hereinafter defined) and by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the purchase form on the back hereof duly executed, at the corporate trust office of [name of Warrant Agent], or its successor as warrant agent (the “**Warrant Agent**”), which is, on the date hereof, at the address specified on the reverse

Exhibit A - 1

hereof, and upon compliance with and subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement (as hereinafter defined).

The term “**Holder**” as used herein shall mean [if Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - prior to _____, (the “**Detachable Date**”), the registered owner of the Company’s [title of Other Securities] to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and after such Detachable Date,] the person in whose name at the time this Warrant Certificate shall be registered upon the books to be maintained by the Warrant Agent for that purpose pursuant to Section 4 of the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may be exercised to purchase Warrant Debt Securities in the principal amount of \$1,000 or any integral multiple thereof in registered form. Upon any exercise of fewer than all of the Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate, there shall be issued to the Holder hereof a new Warrant Certificate evidencing Warrants for the aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised.

This Warrant Certificate is issued under and in accordance with the Warrant Agreement dated as of _____ (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), between the Company and the Warrant Agent and is subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Agreement, to all of which terms and provisions the Holder of this Warrant Certificate consents by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the above-mentioned office of the Warrant Agent.

The Warrant Debt Securities to be issued and delivered upon the exercise of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate will be issued under and in accordance with an Indenture, [dated as of _____, (the “**Senior Indenture**”), between the Company and _____, as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, the “**Senior Trustee**”)] [dated as of _____, (the “**Subordinated Indenture**”), between the Company and _____, as trustee (such trustee, and any successors to such trustee, the “**Subordinated Trustee**”)] and will be subject to the terms and provisions contained in the Warrant Debt Securities and in the Indenture. Copies of the [Senior] [Subordinated] Indenture, including the form of the Warrant Debt Securities, are on file at the corporate trust office of the Trustee.

[If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are not immediately detachable - Prior to the Detachable Date, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged or transferred only together with the [Title of Other Securities] (the “**Other Securities**”) to which this Warrant Certificate was initially attached, and only for the purpose of effecting or in conjunction with, an exchange or transfer of such Other Security. Additionally, on or prior to the Detachable Date, each transfer of such Other Security on the register of the Other Securities shall operate also to transfer this Warrant Certificate. After such date, transfer of this] [If Warrants are attached to Other Securities and are immediately detachable — Transfer of this] Warrant Certificate may be registered when this Warrant Certificate is surrendered at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the registered owner or such owner’s assigns, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement.

[If Other Securities with Warrants which are not immediately detachable - Except as provided in the immediately preceding paragraph, after] [If Other Securities with Warrants which are immediately detachable or Warrants alone - After] countersignature by the Warrant Agent and prior to the expiration of this Warrant Certificate, this Warrant Certificate may be exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent for Warrant Certificates representing Warrants for the same aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities.

Exhibit A - 2

This Warrant Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any of the rights of a holder of the Warrant Debt Securities, including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Warrant Debt Securities or to enforce any of the covenants of the Indenture.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose until countersigned by the Warrant Agent.

Exhibit A - 3

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed in its name and on its behalf by the facsimile signatures of its duly authorized officers.

Dated: _____

SUNSHINE HEART, INC.

By: _____

Its: _____

Attest:

Countersigned

As Warrant Agent

By: _____
Authorized Signature

Exhibit A - 4

[REVERSE OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE]

(Instructions for Exercise of Warrants)

To exercise any Warrants evidenced hereby for Warrant Debt Securities (as hereinafter defined), the Holder must pay, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], the Warrant Price in full for Warrants exercised, to [Warrant Agent] [address of Warrant Agent], Attn: _____, which payment must specify the name of the Holder and the number of Warrants exercised by such Holder. In addition, the Holder must complete the information required below and present this Warrant Certificate in person or by mail (certified or registered mail is recommended) to the Warrant Agent at the appropriate address set forth above. This Warrant Certificate, completed and duly executed, must be received by the Warrant Agent within five business days of the payment.

(To be executed upon exercise of Warrants)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise _____ Warrants, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to purchase \$ _____ principal amount of the [Title of Warrant Debt Securities] (the "**Warrant Debt Securities**"), of SUNSHINE HEART, INC. and represents that the undersigned has tendered payment for such Warrant Debt Securities, in lawful money of the United States of America, [in cash or by certified check or official bank check in New York Clearing House funds] [by bank wire transfer in immediately available funds], to the order of Sunshine Heart, Inc., c/o [insert name and address of Warrant Agent], in the amount of \$ _____ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that said principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities be in fully registered form in the authorized denominations, registered in such names and delivered all as specified in accordance with the instructions set forth below.

If the number of Warrants exercised is less than all of the Warrants evidenced hereby, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants for the aggregate principal amount of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised be issued and delivered to the undersigned unless otherwise specified in the instructions below.

Dated: _____

Name: _____
(Please Print)

Address: _____

(Insert Social Security or Other Identifying Number of Holder)

Signature Guaranteed

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the face of this Warrant Certificate and must bear a signature guarantee by a bank, trust company or member broker of

Exhibit A - 5

the New York, Midwest or Pacific Stock Exchange)

This Warrant may be exercised at the following addresses:

By hand at

By mail at

[Instructions as to form and delivery of Warrant Debt Securities and, if applicable, Warrant Certificates evidencing Warrants for the number of Warrant Debt Securities remaining unexercised — complete as appropriate.]

Exhibit A - 6

ASSIGNMENT

[Form of assignment to be executed if
Warrant Holder desires to transfer Warrant]

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto:

(Please print name and address including zip code)

(Please insert Social Security or other identifying number)

the right represented by the within Warrant to purchase \$
which the within Warrant relates and appoints
in the premises.

aggregate principal amount of [Title of Warrant Debt Securities] of Sunshine Heart, Inc. to
attorney to transfer such right on the books of the Warrant Agent with full power of substitution

Dated: _____

Signature

(Signature must conform in all respects to name of holder as specified on the
face of the Warrant)

Signature Guaranteed

Exhibit A - 7

HONIGMAN

Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP
Attorneys and Counselors

(269) 337-7700
Fax: (269) 337-7701

March 21, 2014

Sunshine Heart, Inc.
12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344

Re: Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), in connection with a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "**Registration Statement**") to be filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**"). The Registration Statement covers: (i) the offer and sale by the selling stockholders of up to an aggregate of 1,513,006 shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("**Common Stock**"), issued or issuable pursuant to the exercise of options and warrants previously issued (collectively, the "**Options and Warrants**"); and (ii) the offer and sale by the Company of the following Securities (as defined below) of an aggregate indeterminate amount having an aggregate public offering price of up to \$100 million, in each case from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"):

- shares of Common Stock;
- shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company (the "**Preferred Stock**");
- senior debt securities, in one or more series (the "**Senior Debt Securities**"), which may be issued pursuant to an indenture to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of Senior Debt Securities thereunder, by and between a trustee to be selected by the Company (the "**Trustee**") and the Company, in the form filed as Exhibit 4.5 to the Registration Statement (the "**Senior Indenture**");
- subordinated debt securities, in one or more series (the "**Subordinated Debt Securities**"; collectively, with the Senior Debt Securities, the "**Debt Securities**"), which may be issued pursuant to an indenture to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of Subordinated Debt Securities thereunder, by and between the Trustee and the Company, in the form filed as Exhibit 4.6 to the Registration Statement (the "**Subordinated Indenture**"); and
- warrants to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock, or Debt Securities (the "**Warrants**"; and the Warrants, collectively, with the Common Stock, the Preferred Stock and the Debt Securities, the "**Securities**"), which may be issued under warrant agreements and warrant certificates, to be dated on or about the date of the first issuance of the applicable Warrants thereunder, by and between a warrant agent to be selected by the Company (the "**Warrant Agent**") and the Company, in the forms filed as Exhibits 4.9, 4.10 and 4.11, respectively, to the Registration Statement (each, a "**Warrant Agreement**").

In connection with this opinion letter, we have examined and relied upon originals, or copies certified to our satisfaction, of such records, documents, certificates, opinions, memoranda and other instruments as in our judgment are necessary or appropriate to enable us to render the opinions expressed below. As to certain factual matters, we have relied upon a certificate of officers of the Company and have not independently sought to verify such matters.

350 East Michigan Avenue · Suite 300 · Kalamazoo, Michigan 49007-3800
Detroit · Lansing · Oakland County · Ann Arbor · Kalamazoo

In rendering the opinions in this opinion letter, we have assumed the genuineness and authenticity of all signatures on original documents; the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals; the conformity to originals of all documents submitted to us as copies; the accuracy, completeness and authenticity of certificates of public officials; and the due authorization, execution and delivery of all documents where authorization, execution and delivery are prerequisites to the effectiveness of such documents. With respect to our opinion as to the Common Stock, we have assumed that, at the time of issuance and sale, a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock will be authorized and available for issuance and that the consideration for the issuance and sale of the Common Stock (or the conversion price for Preferred Stock or Debt Securities convertible into Common Stock or the exercise price for Warrants exercisable for Common Stock) is in an amount that is not less than the par value of the Common Stock. With respect to our opinion as to the Preferred Stock, we have assumed that, at the time of issuance and sale, a sufficient number of shares of Preferred Stock will be authorized, designated and available for issuance and that the consideration for the issuance and sale of the Preferred Stock (or the conversion price for Debt Securities convertible into Preferred Stock or the exercise price for Warrants exercisable for Preferred Stock) is in an amount that is not less than the par value of the Preferred Stock. We have also assumed that any Warrants offered under the Registration Statement, and the related Warrant Agreement, will be executed in the forms filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement or incorporated by reference therein. We have also assumed that any Debt Securities offered under the Registration Statement will be issued pursuant to the form of Senior Indenture or the form of Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement. We have also assumed that (i) with respect to Securities being issued upon conversion of any convertible Preferred Stock, the applicable convertible Preferred Stock will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable; and (ii) with respect to any Securities being issued upon conversion of any convertible Debt Securities or upon exercise of any Warrants, the applicable convertible Debt Securities or Warrants will be valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

We express no opinion as to enforceability of any right or obligation to the extent such right or obligation is subject to and limited by (i) bankruptcy, insolvency, moratorium, reorganization, fraudulent conveyance or other laws relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) rules governing the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies, (iii) the effect of federal and state securities laws and

the principles of public policy on the rights of indemnity and contribution, (iv) general principles of equity (including, without limitation, concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing), regardless of whether considered in a proceeding at law or in equity, and (v) the effect of public policy considerations that may limit the rights of the parties to obtain further remedies.

Our opinions herein are expressed solely with respect to (i) the federal laws of the United States; (ii) the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended; and (iii) as to the Debt Securities and the Warrants constituting valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, solely with respect to the laws of the State of New York. Our opinions are based on these laws as in effect on the date hereof. We express no opinion as to whether the laws of any jurisdiction are applicable to the subject matter hereof. We are not rendering any opinion as to compliance with any federal or state antifraud law, rule or regulation relating to securities, or to the sale or issuance thereof. It is understood that this opinion letter is to be used only in connection with the offer and sale of the Securities while the Registration Statement is in effect.

On the basis of the foregoing and in reliance thereon, and subject to the qualifications herein stated, we are of the opinion that:

1. The shares of the Common Stock to be offered and sold by the selling stockholders under the Registration Statement, when issued, delivered and fully paid for in accordance with the terms of the agreements pursuant to which the Options and Warrants were issued, are or will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable provided that: (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have all become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the issuance of the Common

2

Stock has been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the issuance and sale of the Common Stock do not violate any applicable law, are in conformity with the Company's then operative Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the "**Certificate of Incorporation**") and Amended and Restated Bylaws (the "**Bylaws**"), do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates for the Common Stock have been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor.

2. The Common Stock to be offered and sold by the Company under the Registration Statement, when issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement, the related prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement(s) and in accordance with any applicable duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or upon conversion of any convertible Preferred Stock, or convertible Debt Securities in accordance with their terms, or upon exercise of any Warrants in accordance with their terms, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, provided that: (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have all become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the issuance of the Common Stock has been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the issuance and sale of the Common Stock do not violate any applicable law, are in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates for the Common Stock have been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor.

2. The Preferred Stock to be offered and sold by the Company under the Registration Statement, when issued and sold as contemplated in the Registration Statement, the related prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement(s) and in accordance with any applicable duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or upon conversion of any convertible Debt Securities in accordance with their terms, or upon exercise of any Warrants in accordance with their terms, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, provided that: (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have all become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the terms and issuance of the Preferred Stock have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the terms of the shares of Preferred Stock and their issuance and sale do not violate any applicable law, are in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates for the Preferred Stock have been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor.

3. The Debt Securities to be issued under the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, and to be offered and sold by the Company under the Registration Statement, when issued and sold in accordance with the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, and a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or upon exercise of any Warrants under the Warrant Agreement, will be valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, provided that: (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have all become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, has been duly authorized by the Company and the Trustee by all necessary corporate action; (iii) the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, in substantially the form filed as an exhibit to the

3

Registration Statement, has been duly executed and delivered by the Company and the Trustee; (iv) the issuance and terms of the Debt Securities have been duly authorized by the Company by all necessary corporate action; (v) the terms of the Debt Securities and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, so as to be in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (vi) the Debt Securities have been duly executed and delivered by the Company and authenticated by the Trustee pursuant to the Senior Indenture or the Subordinated Indenture, as applicable, and delivered against payment therefor.

4. The Warrants to be issued under the Warrant Agreement and to be offered and sold by the Company under the Registration Statement, when issued and sold in accordance with the Warrant Agreement and a duly authorized, executed and delivered purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, will be valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, provided that: (i) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto have all become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (ii) the Warrant Agreement has been duly authorized by the Company and the Warrant Agent by all necessary corporate action; (iii) the Warrant Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company and the Warrant Agent; (iv) the issuance and terms of the Warrants have been duly authorized by the Company by all necessary corporate action; (v) the terms of the Warrants and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the Warrant Agreement and as described in the Registration Statement, the related prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement(s), so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company, so as to be in conformity with the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws, and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (vi) the Warrants have been duly executed and delivered by the Company and authenticated by the Warrant Agent pursuant to the Warrant Agreement and delivered against payment therefor.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus included in the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we do not admit that we are within the category of persons whose consent is required by Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder by the Commission. This opinion is expressed as of the date hereof, and we disclaim any undertaking to advise you of any subsequent changes in the facts stated or assumed herein or of any subsequent changes in applicable law.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP

Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP

HONIGMAN

Honigman Miller Schwartz and Cohn LLP
Attorneys and Counselors

(269) 337-7700
Fax: (269) 337-7701

March 21, 2014

Sunshine Heart, Inc.
12988 Valley View Road
Eden Prairie, MN 55344

Re: Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to SUNSHINE HEART, INC., a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), in connection with a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "**Registration Statement**") to be filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), relating to the sale of up to \$40 million of shares of common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (the "**Shares**"), that may be issued by the Company to Cowen and Company, LLC ("**Cowen**"). The Shares that may be offered by Cowen pursuant to the prospectus contained in the Registration Statement are issuable pursuant to the Sales Agreement between the Company and Cowen, dated March 21, 2014 (the "**Sales Agreement**").

In connection with this opinion letter, we have examined and relied upon originals, or copies certified to our satisfaction, of such records, documents, certificates, opinions, memoranda and other instruments as in our judgment are necessary or appropriate to enable us to render the opinions expressed below. As to certain factual matters, we have relied upon a certificate of officers of the Company and have not independently sought to verify such matters.

In rendering the opinions in this opinion letter, we have assumed the genuineness and authenticity of all signatures on original documents; the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals; the conformity to originals of all documents submitted to us as copies; the accuracy, completeness and authenticity of certificates of public officials; and the due authorization, execution and delivery of all documents where authorization, execution and delivery are prerequisites to the effectiveness of such documents. With respect to our opinion as to the Shares, we have assumed that, at the time of issuance and sale, a sufficient number of shares of the Company's common stock will be authorized and available for issuance.

We express no opinion as to enforceability of any right or obligation to the extent such right or obligation is subject to and limited by (i) bankruptcy, insolvency, moratorium, reorganization, fraudulent conveyance or other laws relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) rules governing the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies, (iii) the effect of federal and state securities laws and the principles of public policy on the rights of indemnity and contribution, (iv) general principles of equity (including, without limitation, concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing), regardless of whether considered in a proceeding at law or in equity, and (v) the effect of public policy considerations that may limit the rights of the parties to obtain further remedies.

The opinion expressed below is limited to the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended.

For purposes of the opinion expressed below, we have assumed that (i) a sufficient number of authorized but unissued shares of the Company's common stock will be available for issuance when the Shares are issued; (ii) the Registration Statement and any required post-effective amendment thereto will have become effective under the Securities Act and the related prospectus and any and all applicable prospectus supplement(s) required by applicable laws will have been delivered and filed as required by such laws; (iii) the issuance of the Shares will have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company; (iii) the issuance and sale of the Shares do not violate any applicable law, are in conformity with the Company's then operative Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws, do not result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and comply with any applicable requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company; and (iv) the certificates for the Shares will have

350 East Michigan Avenue · Suite 300 · Kalamazoo, Michigan 49007-3800
Detroit · Lansing · Oakland County · Ann Arbor · Kalamazoo

been duly executed by the Company, countersigned by the transfer agent therefor and duly delivered to the purchasers thereof against payment therefor.

Based upon and subject to the foregoing, we are of the opinion that the Shares to be offered and sold pursuant to the Sales Agreement will be duly authorized and, upon issuance and delivery against payment therefor in accordance with the terms of the Sales Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

We hereby consent to the inclusion of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the base prospectus and sales agreement prospectus included in the Registration Statement. In giving our consent, we do not admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder by the Commission. This opinion is expressed as of the date hereof, and we disclaim any undertaking to advise you of any subsequent changes in the facts stated or assumed herein or of any subsequent changes in applicable law.

It is understood that this opinion is to be used only in connection with the offer and sale of Shares pursuant to the Sales Agreement while the Registration Statement is in effect.

Very truly yours,

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption “Experts” in this Registration Statement (Form S-3) and related base prospectus and sales agreement prospectus of Sunshine Heart, Inc., for the registration of common stock, preferred stock, warrants, and debt securities and to the incorporation by reference therein of our report dated March 14, 2014, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of Sunshine Heart, Inc. and subsidiaries included in its Annual Report (Form 10-K) for the year ended December 31, 2013, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP
Minneapolis, Minnesota
March 21, 2014
